Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) for Technical Content Version 2.0

Working Draft 07

08 November 2022

This version:
OASIS has not yet provided the URLs for this document.

Previous version:
N/A

Latest version:
OASIS has not yet provided the URLs for this document.

Technical Committee:
OASIS Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) TC

Chair:
Kristen James Eberlein (kris@eberleinconsulting.com), Eberlein Consulting LLC

Editors:
Kristen James Eberlein (kris@eberleinconsulting.com), Eberlein Consulting LLC
Robert D. Anderson (robert.dan.anderson@oracle.com), Oracle

Additional artifacts:
This prose specification is one component of a work product that also includes:

• X (DITA source)
• X (Grammar files)

Related work:
...

Abstract:
The Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) for Technical Content Version 2.0 specification ...

Status:
This document was last revised or approved by the OASIS Darwin Information Typing Architecture (DITA) TC on the above date. The level of approval is also listed above. Check the “Latest stage” location noted above for possible later revisions of this document. Any other numbered Versions and other technical work produced by the Technical Committee (TC) are listed at https://www.oasis-open.org/committees/tc_home.php?wg_abbrev=dita#technical.

TC members should send comments on this specification to the TC’s email list. Others should send comments to the TC’s public comment list, after subscribing to it by following the instructions at the “Send

This specification is provided under the RF on Limited Terms Mode of the OASIS IPR Policy, the mode chosen when the Technical Committee was established. For information on whether any patents have been disclosed that may be essential to implementing this specification, and any offers of patent licensing terms, please refer to the Intellectual Property Rights section of the TC's web page (https://www.oasis-open.org/committees/dita/ipr.php).

Note that any machine-readable content (Computer Language Definitions) declared Normative for this Work Product is provided in separate plain text files. In the event of a discrepancy between any such plain text file and display content in the Work Product's prose narrative document(s), the content in the separate plain text file prevails.

Citation format:
When referencing this specification, the following citation format should be used:

[wp-abbrev]

Notices

Copyright © OASIS Open 2020. All Rights Reserved.

All capitalized terms in the following text have the meanings assigned to them in the OASIS Intellectual Property Rights Policy (the “OASIS IPR Policy”). The full Policy may be found at the OASIS website.

This document and translations of it may be copied and furnished to others, and derivative works that comment on or otherwise explain it or assist in its implementation may be prepared, copied, published, and distributed, in whole or in part, without restriction of any kind, provided that the above copyright notice and this section are included on all such copies and derivative works. However, this document itself may not be modified in any way, including by removing the copyright notice or references to OASIS, except as needed for the purpose of developing any document or deliverable produced by an OASIS Technical Committee (in which case the rules applicable to copyrights, as set forth in the OASIS IPR Policy, must be followed) or as required to translate it into languages other than English.

The limited permissions granted above are perpetual and will not be revoked by OASIS or its successors or assigns.

This document and the information contained herein is provided on an "AS IS" basis and OASIS DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY WARRANTY THAT THE USE OF THE INFORMATION HEREIN WILL NOT INFRINGE ANY OWNERSHIP RIGHTS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

OASIS requests that any OASIS Party or any other party that believes it has patent claims that would necessarily be infringed by implementations of this OASIS Committee Specification or OASIS Standard, to notify OASIS TC Administrator and provide an indication of its willingness to grant patent licenses to such patent claims in a manner consistent with the IPR Mode of the OASIS Technical Committee that produced this specification.

OASIS invites any party to contact the OASIS TC Administrator if it is aware of a claim of ownership of any patent claims that would necessarily be infringed by implementations of this specification by a patent holder that is not willing to provide a license to such patent claims in a manner consistent with the IPR Mode of the OASIS Technical Committee that produced this specification. OASIS may include such claims on its website, but disclaims any obligation to do so.

OASIS takes no position regarding the validity or scope of any intellectual property or other rights that might be claimed to pertain to the implementation or use of the technology described in this document or the extent to which any license under such rights might or might not be available; neither does it represent that it has made any effort to identify any such rights. Information on OASIS’ procedures with respect to rights in any document or deliverable produced by an OASIS Technical Committee can be found on the OASIS website. Copies of claims of rights made available for publication and any assurances of licenses to be made available, or the result of an attempt made to obtain a general license or permission for the use of such proprietary rights by implementers or users of this OASIS Committee Specification or OASIS Standard, can be obtained from the OASIS TC Administrator. OASIS makes no representation that any information or list of intellectual property rights will at any time be complete, or that any claims in such list are, in fact, Essential Claims.

The name "OASIS" is a trademark of OASIS, the owner and developer of this specification, and should be used only to refer to the organization and its official outputs. OASIS welcomes reference to, and implementation and use of, specifications, while reserving the right to enforce its marks against misleading uses. Please see https://www.oasis-open.org/policies-guidelines/trademark for above guidance.
# Table of contents

1 Introduction........................................................................................................................... 6
  1.1 About DITA for Technical Content.................................................................................... 6
    1.1.1 Written specification................................................................................................. 6
    1.1.2 XML grammar files................................................................................................... 7
  1.2 Terminology....................................................................................................................... 7
  1.3 References......................................................................................................................... 7
    1.3.1 Normative references............................................................................................... 7
    1.3.2 Informative references............................................................................................. 8
  1.4 Formatting conventions in the HTML5 version of the specification......................... 10
    1.4.1 Link previews......................................................................................................... 10
    1.4.2 Navigation links...................................................................................................... 10
2 Topic and map document types........................................................................................... 12
  2.1 Bookmap.......................................................................................................................... 12
  2.2 Concept............................................................................................................................ 13
  2.3 Glossary entry.................................................................................................................. 14
  2.4 Glossary group.................................................................................................................. 15
  2.5 Reference......................................................................................................................... 15
  2.6 Task.................................................................................................................................. 16
    2.6.1 General task............................................................................................................. 16
    2.6.2 Strict task............................................................................................................... 17
  2.7 Troubleshooting.............................................................................................................. 18
3 Domain specializations......................................................................................................... 22
  3.1 Equation and MathML domains...................................................................................... 22
  3.2 Release management domain.......................................................................................... 22
  3.3 xNAL domain.................................................................................................................. 24
    3.3.1 xNAL usage guidelines.......................................................................................... 25
4 Element reference.................................................................................................................. 28
  4.1 Elements, A to Z.............................................................................................................. 28
  4.2 Topic and map specializations......................................................................................... 33
    4.2.1 Bookmap elements................................................................................................. 33
    4.2.2 Concept elements.................................................................................................... 61
    4.2.3 Glossary elements................................................................................................. 63
    4.2.4 Reference elements............................................................................................... 78
    4.2.5 Task elements......................................................................................................... 85
    4.2.6 Troubleshooting elements..................................................................................... 102
  4.3 Domain specializations..................................................................................................... 110
    4.3.1 Equation domain..................................................................................................... 110
    4.3.2 Hardware domain................................................................................................. 116
    4.3.3 Markup domain...................................................................................................... 117
    4.3.4 MathML domain..................................................................................................... 117
    4.3.5 Programming domain............................................................................................ 121
    4.3.6 Release management domain................................................................................. 125
    4.3.7 Software domain.................................................................................................... 130
    4.3.8 SVG domain........................................................................................................... 133
    4.3.9 Syntax diagram domain......................................................................................... 137
    4.3.10 User interface domain......................................................................................... 148
    4.3.11 XML mention domain......................................................................................... 150
    4.3.12 xNAL domain....................................................................................................... 154
1 Introduction

The technical content part of DITA models the semantics of information types for technical content.

The technical content part of DITA adds the semantics of technical-content information-types to base DITA. This is done through several specializations:

- **Topic specializations:**
  - Concept
  - Glossary entry
  - Reference
  - Task
  - Troubleshooting
- **Domain specializations:**
  - Abbreviated form
  - Equation
  - Hazard statement
  - Highlight
  - Indexing
  - Markup
  - MathML
  - Programming
  - Release management
  - Software
  - SVG
  - Syntax diagram
  - User interface
  - Utilities
  - XML mention
- **Bookmap map specialization**

1.1 About DITA for Technical Content

The DITA technical content specification is designed for users who use information typing and document complex applications and devices, such as software, hardware, medical devices, and more.

1.1.1 Written specification

The specification is written for implementers of the DITA standard, including tool developers and XML architects who develop specializations.

The specification contains several parts:

- Introduction
- Architectural specification
- Language reference
- Conformance statement
- Appendices

The specification is available in the following formats:
1.1.2 XML grammar files
The XML grammar files are available in RELAX NG (RNG), and XML Document-Type Definitions (DTD).
While the files should define the same DITA elements, the RELAX NG grammars are normative if there is a discrepancy.

1.2 Terminology
The key words "MUST", "MUST NOT", "REQUIRED", "SHALL", "SHALL NOT", "SHOULD", "SHOULD NOT", "RECOMMEND", "MAY", and "OPTIONAL" in this document are to be interpreted as described in [RFC-2119] and [RFC8174] when, and only when, they appear in all capitals, as shown here.
The DITA specification uses <keyword> elements with the @outputclass attribute set to "RFC-2119" for these key words. In general, normative statements that use such key words pertain to what is needed for interoperability.
These key words are rendered with bold formatting. The normative statements are indicated visually in the rendered specification by blue lines at the left and right of the statement:

   If the root element of a map or a top-level topic has no value for the @xml:lang attribute, a processor SHOULD assume a default value. The default value of the processor can be either fixed, configurable, or derived from the content itself, such as the @xml:lang attribute on the root map.

In addition, a hyperlink is rendered to the left of the statement that contains the normative term. The link is to a generated appendix that groups all the normative statements that appear in the specification.

1.3 References
This section contains the normative and informative references that are used in this document.
While any hyperlinks included in this section were valid at the time of publication, OASIS cannot guarantee their long-term validity.

1.3.1 Normative references
The following documents are referenced in such a way that some or all of their content constitutes requirements of this document.

[RFC-2119]

[RFC 3986]

[RFC 5646]
1.3.2 Informative references

The following referenced documents are not required for the application of this document but might assist the reader with regard to a particular subject area.

[ANSI Z535.6]

[cq-v3.0]
OASIS Committee Specification 02, **Customer Information Quality Specifications Version 3.0. Name (xNL), Address (xAL), Name and Address (xNAL) and Party (xPIL)**, http://www.oasis-open.org/committees/download.php/29877/OASIS%20CIQ%20V3.0%20CS02.zip, 20 September 2008.

[HTML5]

[ISO 8601]

[ISO/IEC 19757-3]

[Namespaces in XML 1.0]

[Namespaces in XML 1.1]

[OASIS Table Model]

[RELAX NG]
[RELAX NG Compact Syntax]

[RELAX NG DTD Compatibility]

[SVG 1.1]

[Unicode BiDi]

[WCAG 2.1]

[XHTML 1.0]

[XHTML 1.1]

[XPointer 1.0]

[XML Catalogs 1.1]

[xml:tm 1.0]

[XSL 1.0]

[XSL 1.1]
1.4 Formatting conventions in the HTML5 version of the specification

Given the size and complexity of the specification, it is not generated as a single HTML5 file. Instead, each DITA topic is rendered as a separate HTML5 file.

The HTML5 version of the specification uses certain formatting conventions to aid readers in navigating through the specification and locating material easily: Link previews and navigation links.

1.4.1 Link previews

The DITA specification uses the content of the DITA `<shortdesc>` element to provide link previews for its readers. These link previews are visually highlighted by a colored background.

The link previews serve as enhanced navigation aids, enabling readers to more easily locate content. This usability enhancement is one of the ways in which the specification illustrates the capabilities of DITA and exemplifies DITA best practices.

The following screen capture illustrates how link previews are displayed in the HTML5 version of the specification:

Figure 1: Link previews

1.4.2 Navigation links

To ease readers in navigating from one topic to another, each HTML5 file generated by a DITA topic contains navigation links at the bottom.

**Parent topic**

- Takes readers to the parent topic, which is the topic referenced by the closest topic in the containment hierarchy
Previous topic
Takes readers to the previous topic in the reading sequence

Next topic
Takes readers to the next topic in the reading sequence

Return to main page
Takes readers to the place in the table of contents for the current topic in the reading sequence

The following screen capture illustrates how navigation links are displayed in the HTML5 version of the specification:

Figure 2: Navigation links

When readers hover over the navigation links, the short description of the DITA topic is also displayed.
2 Topic and map document types

The Technical Content package contains various document types: concept, glossary entry, glossary group, reference, general task, strict task, and troubleshooting. The package also includes the bookmap document type.

2.1 Bookmap

The DITA bookmap specialization represents the key markup requirements for managing DITA content through book-oriented publication processes, including book metadata and book structures for organizing content.

Purpose

Book maps enable authors to produce documents that are structured like traditional print-oriented media. They also provide metadata for recording information about the book, including authors, owners, versions, and production history.

Content model

A book map can contain the following document structures:

- Titles
- Metadata
- Front matter (including notices and a preface)
- Parts
- Chapters
- Appendixes
- Back matter
- Relationship tables

Other components of a book map enable authors to specify that artifacts such as a table of contents (TOC) or an index should be generated.

Example

The following code sample contains the markup for a bookmap:

```xml
<bookmap id="taskbook">
  <booktitle>
    <mainbooktitle>Product tasks</mainbooktitle>
    <booktitlealt>Tasks and what they do</booktitlealt>
  </booktitle>
  <bookmeta>
    <author>John Doe</author>
    <bookrights>
      <copyrfirst>
        <year>2020</year>
      </copyrfirst>
      <bookowner>
        <person href="task-preface.dita">Jane Doe</person>
      </bookowner>
    </bookrights>
  </bookmeta>
  <frontmatter>
    <preface/>
  </frontmatter>
</bookmap>
```
Note that the bookmap uses several mechanisms to include chapter content:

- Referencing a DITA map
- Referencing a DITA topic
- Nesting `<topicref>` elements

### 2.2 Concept

Concept topics are designed to provide conceptual or descriptive information.

#### Purpose

Concept topics serve a variety of purposes:

- Provide background information that helps readers understand essential facts about a product, process, or task
- Provide an extended definition of a major abstraction, such as a process or function
- Explain the nature and components of a product and describe how it fits into a category of products
- Help readers map their knowledge and understanding to the tasks that they need to perform

#### Content model

The body of a concept topic can contain the following document structures:

- Basic document structures: divisions, paragraphs, lists, tables, figures, etc.
- Concept body divisions: `<conbodydiv>` (62)
- Examples
- Sections

However, after a section or example is introduced into the topic structure, it can be followed only by a section, example, or concept body division.

---

**Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 07 October 2022**

What is rationale for this design choice? It would be good to explain it

**Disposition: Unassigned**

---

**Example**

**Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 07 October 2022**

I think the content of the `<example>` section sucks. For the examples in this "Overview" section, I think it's important that they be solid topics.

**Disposition: Unassigned**
The following code sample contains a simple concept topic:

```xml
<concept id="concept">
  <title>Bird Songs</title>
  <shortdesc>Bird songs are complex vocalizations used to attract mates or defend territories.</shortdesc>
  <conbody>
    <p>Bird songs vary widely among species, from simple songs that are genetically imprinted to complex songs that are learned over a lifetime.</p>
    <example>
      <p>Flycatchers know their songs from birth:</p>
      <ul>
        <li>Flycatcher songs are simple sequences of notes.</li>
        <li>Flycatcher songs never vary but are unique to each member of the Flycatcher family.</li>
      </ul>
    </example>
  </conbody>
</concept>
```

### 2.3 Glossary entry

A glossary entry topic defines a single meaning of a term. It also can provide information such as part of speech, acronyms, and acronym expansions.

**Purpose**

Glossary entry topics serve the following purposes:

- They ensure that a team of writers can use the same terminology.
- They make it possible to create glossaries that can be use to provide readers with definitions of terms and explanations about acronyms.

**Content model**

Each glossary entry topic contains the following structures:

- Term
- Definition of term
- Glossary body (which can contain acronyms and surface terms)
- Related links

**Example**

The following code sample contains a simple glossentry topic:

```xml
<glossentry id="ddl">
  <glossterm>data definition language</glossterm>
  <glossdef>A language used for defining database schemas</glossdef>
</glossentry>
```

---

**Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 07 October 2022**

This should have a glossbody that specifies an acronym and a surface term. Also related links.

**Disposition: Unassigned**
2.4 Glossary group
Glossary group topics are designed to enable authors to author and edit glossary entries in a single file, rather than working with many single glossary entry topics.

Purpose
The glossary group topic has the following purposes:

Content model

Example
The following code sample shows a glossary group topic:

2.5 Reference
Reference topics contain reference information that users might need to consult occasionally, for example, product specifications, part lists, API calls, and programming language commands.

Purpose and usage
Reference topics serve the following purposes:

• Provide data that supports novice users as they perform a task
• Provide quick access to fact-based information
• Contain information that advanced users look up infrequently

Reference topics are used for the following types of information and more:

• API documentation
• Bibliographies
• Configuration file options
• Catalogs
• Element references
• Lists of equipment, ingredients, parts, and tools
• Specifications
• Syntax diagrams and explanations

Content model
The body of a reference topic can contain the following document structures:

• Examples: <example>
• Property lists: <properties> (79)
• Reference body divisions: <refbodydiv> (83)
• Sections: <section>
• Syntax sections: <refsyn> (85)
• Tables: <simpletable> and <table>
These structures can appear in any order or combination. However, basic document structure such as paragraphs, lists, and figures cannot be placed directly in the body of the reference topic. They must be contained within one of the structures listed above.

**Example**
The following code sample contains a simple reference topic:

```xml
<Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 26 October 2022>
While the following code sample is a perfectly reasonable example of a properties list, I think we could provide a better example of a reference topic.
</Comment>
<Disposition: Unassigned>

```xml
<reference id="oil-types">
<title>Oil types</title>
<shortdesc>The tables provide the recommended oil types.</shortdesc>
<refbody>
<properties>
<prophead>
<proptypehd>Oil type</proptypehd>
<propvaluehd>Oil brand</propvaluehd>
<propdeschd>Appropriate use</propdeschd>
</prophead>
<property>
<proptype>Primary oil</proptype>
<propvalue>A1X</propvalue>
<propdesc>One-cylinder engines</propdesc>
</property>
<property>
<proptype>Secondary oil</proptype>
<propvalue>B2Z</propvalue>
<propdesc>Two-cylinder engines</propdesc>
</property>
</properties>
</refbody>
</reference>
```

### 2.6 Task

DITA offers two varieties of task topics: general task and strict task. Both task topics serve the same purpose: to provide users with comprehensive instructions for performing a task. Their content models vary, however.

#### 2.6.1 General task

A general task topic answers the "How do I?" question by providing instructions and other necessary information that enables users to complete the task successfully. It has a content model that is more relaxed than that of the strict task.

**Content model**

The general task topic is divided into three parts:

**Introduction**

This portion of the topic can contain the following structural sections:

- Prerequisites: `<prerequisites>` (92)
- Contextual information: `<context>` (91)
- Sections: `<sections>`
These sections are all optional. They can appear in any order and can occur multiple times.

Procedural instructions
This portion of the topic can contain only one of the following structural sections:

- Steps: <steps> (95)
- Steps informal: <steps-informal> (95)
- Steps unordered: <steps-unordered> (98)

Post-instructions
The section of the topic can contain the following structural sections:

1. Result: <result> (93)
2. Troubleshooting information: <tasktroubleshooting> (101)
3. Example: <example>
4. What to do next: <postreq> (92)

While all of the above structural components are optional, they must occur in the outlined order. Examples and post-requisites can occur multiple times.

Example

2.6.2 Strict task
A strict task topic answers the "How do I?" question by providing precise step-by-step instructions and other necessary information that enables users to complete the task successfully.

Content model
The strict task topic is divided into three parts:

Introduction
This portion of the topic can contain the following structural sections:

1. Prerequisites: <prerequisites> (92)
2. Contextual information: <context> (91)

These sections are all optional, but they must occur in the outlined order.

Procedural instructions
This portion of the topic can contain only one of the following structural sections:

- Steps: <steps> (95)
- Steps unordered: <steps-unordered> (98)

Post-instructions
The section of the topic can contain the following structural sections:

1. Result: <result> (93)
2. Troubleshooting information: <tasktroubleshooting> (101)
3. Example: <example>
4. What to do next: <postreq> (92)

These sections are all optional, but they must occur in the outlined order.
Example

The following code sample contains a strict task topic:

```xml
<task id="birdhousebuilding">
  <title>Building a bird house</title>
  <shortdesc>Building a birdhouse is a perfect activity for adults to share with their children or grandchildren. It can be used to teach about birds, as well as the proper use of tools.</shortdesc>
  <prereq>To build a sound birdhouse, you will need a complete set of tools:
  <ul>
    <li>hand saw</li>
    <li>hammer ...</li>
  </ul>
  <context>Birdhouses provide safe locations for birds to build nests and raise their young. They also provide shelter during cold and rainy spells.</context>
  <steps>
    <step><cmd>Lay out the dimensions for the birdhouse elements.</cmd></step>
    <step><cmd>Cut the elements to size.</cmd></step>
    <step><cmd>Drill a 1 1/2" diameter hole for the bird entrance on the front.</cmd></step>
    <info>You need to look at the drawing for the correct placement of the hole.</info>
  </steps>
  <result>You now have a beautiful new birdhouse!</result>
  <postreq>Now find a good place to mount it.</postreq>
</task>
```

2.7 Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting topics are designed to provide markup for documenting corrective action, such as troubleshooting and alarm clearing.

Purpose

Troubleshooting topics serve the following purposes:

- Define the condition or symptom. Usually the condition or symptom is an undesirable state in a system, a product, or a service that a reader wants to correct.
- Provide information that helps the reader diagnose which cause and remedy pairs apply.
- Explains the cause of the condition or symptom, if it is known.
- Describe how to remedy the condition or symptom.

Content model

The troubleshooting topic is divided into three parts:

Condition

This portion of the topic can contain a `<condition>` (103) element. This element is optional, as often the problematic condition can be adequately described in the title and short description.

Diagnosis

This portion of the topic provides information that helps determine which cause and remedy pair applies to a given situation. It can contain the following elements: `<diagnostics-general>` (104) and `<diagnostics-steps>` (106).

Trouble solution

This portion of the topic provides information about how to remedy the problematic solution. It can contain multiple `<cause>` (102) and `<remedy>` (107) pairs.

Cause and remedy might occur in combinations other than pairs. It is possible to have:
Examples

Figure 3: Simple troubleshooting topic

The following code sample shows a simple troubleshooting topic. The title and short description describe the problem, and the single `<troublesolution>` element contains explanations of the cause of the problem and how to remedy it.

```xml
<troubleshooting id="oasis-spec-not-rendered-correctly">
  <title>Specification PDF is not rendered correctly</title>
  <shortdesc>The specification URIs and notices appear in the TOC; they also appear twice in the body of the document.</shortdesc>
  <troublebody>
    <troubleSolution>
      <cause>
        <p>This problem occurs when the `<xml:element>notices</xml:element>` element for external publishing is not excluded.</p>
      </cause>
      <remedy>
        <steps>
          <step>
            <cmd>Use a DITAVAL file that excludes the `<xml:element>notices</xml:element>` element platform="external-publishing-engine" when you generate the PDF.</cmd>
          </step>
        </steps>
      </remedy>
    </troubleSolution>
  </troublebody>
</troubleshooting>
```

The troubleshooting information type

In its simplest form, troubleshooting information follows this pattern:

1. A condition or symptom. Usually the condition or symptom is an undesirable state in a system, a product, or a service that a reader wants to correct.
2. A cause for the condition or symptom.
3. A remedy for the condition or symptom.

The troubleshooting topic provides sections for describing the condition, causes, and remedies needed to restore a system, a product, or a service to normal.

For some conditions there could be more than one cause-remedy pair. The troubleshooting topic accommodates this. Typically, a cause is immediately followed by its remedy. Multiple cause-remedy pairs can provide a series of successive fall-backs for resolving a condition. An optional diagnostics section can be included to assist in determining which of the cause-remedy pairs applies to the specific situation.

Cause and remedy might occur in combinations other than pairs. It is possible to have:

- Multiple causes with the same remedy
- A single cause with more than one remedy
- A remedy with no known cause
- A cause with no known remedy

The troubleshooting information type also can be used to document alarm clearing strategies.
The structure of the troubleshooting topic

The top-level element for troubleshooting topics is `<troubleshooting>`. The `<troubleshooting>` element contains a `<title>`, a short description or `<abstract>`, a `<prolog>`, a `<troublebody>`, and `<related-links>`.

`<troublebody>` is the main body element in a troubleshooting topic. The `<troublebody>` element contains the following elements:

`<condition>`
This optional element is the first child of `<troublebody>`, and it describes a condition or symptom that is associated with an undesirable state in a system, a product, or a service. Do not use this element in cases where the topic title fully explains the condition.

`<diagnostics>`
This optional element precedes `<troubleSolution>` and provides information used to determine which cause-remedy pair applies in a given situation.

The `<diagnostics>` element contains one of the following elements:

`<diagnostics-general>`
This element provides non-procedural diagnostic information, such as a flowchart diagram or a look-up table of symptoms. Results of the diagnostic may link to the specific cause-remedy section that applies to each result.

`<diagnostics-steps>`
This element provides step-by-step instructions for diagnosing the problem. Step results may link to the specific cause-remedy section that applies.

`<troubleSolution>`
One or more `<troubleSolution>` elements appears in the `<troublebody>` element. `<troubleSolution>` is a wrapper element for `<cause>` and `<remedy>`, each of which are a cause-remedy pair.

Comment by robander on 25 may 2021
Not certain, but I think “each of which are a cause-remedy pair” can be removed? I think it’s not adding anything and I’m not entirely sure exactly what “each” refers to.
Disposition: Unassigned

The `<troubleSolution>` element contains the following elements:

`<cause>`
This optional, repeatable, first-child of `<condition> `<troubleSolution>` describes a possible cause for the condition.

`<remedy>`
This optional, repeatable, last-child of `<troubleSolution>` describes a possible remedy for the condition.

The `<remedy>` element begins with an optional `<title>` element followed by an optional `<responsibleParty>` element followed by either a `<steps>` element, a `<steps-unordered>` element, or a `<steps-informal>` element. The content models for `<steps>`, `<steps-unordered>`, and `<steps-informal>` are borrowed from `<task>`. This allows `<remedy>` to reuse steps from tasks.

`<responsibleParty>`
This optional first child of `<remedy>` indicates who is expected to perform the steps that are outlined in the `<remedy>` element.
Related concepts
Troubleshooting information
3 Domain specializations

This section contains information about the technical content domains, including a general overview and more specific information about the xNAL, release management, equation, and MathML domains.

Comment by robander on 25 may 2021
Should this be more comprehensive, and not just limited to those three or four domains? Or are the others like "software" too obvious to require a topic?
Disposition: Unassigned

3.1 Equation and MathML domains

The MathML and equation domains provide general containers for equations (inline, block, and display) and an integration with the MathML standard. The equation containers identify equations separate from the data that provides the equation content, which might take many forms, including MathML markup, images, and non-XML formats like TeX and ASCII equations.

These two domains provide support for mathematics elements:

MathML domain

- Provides the `<mathml>` element, which is a specialization of `<foreign>`. The `<mathml>` element can contain direct MathML markup, or it can use the `<mathmlref>` element to include MathML markup that is stored in a separate, non-DITA document. When this domain is integrated without additional constraints, the `<mathml>` element is allowed wherever `<foreign>` is allowed.
- The equation domain elements can be used to distinguish equations semantically. While authors can include the `<mathml>` element directly in content, the recommended best practice is to always include `<mathml>` within one of the equation domain elements or their semantic equivalent in a non-OASIS-defined DITA vocabulary.

Equation domain

- Provides the `<equation-inline>`, `<equation-block>`, and `<equation-figure>` elements.
- This domain can be used independently of the MathML domain. The elements in the equation domain enable authors to clearly distinguish equations from other type of content; these markup distinctions can enable formatting distinctions, numbering of equations, and more.

3.2 Release management domain

The release management domain provides markup that enables content developers to log information about changes that have been made to a DITA topic or map. This information can be used to generate release notes, which can help users locate significant changes in revisions of large documents.

Processors can gather the information and assemble it into an appendix or separate document, thus eliminating the need for separate release-note topics or external tracking mechanisms such as spread sheets or databases. Regulated industries can use the release management domain to provide the records that are required by regulatory agencies.
This figure shows the structure of the release management elements.

**Figure 4: Release management elements**

The following list provides a brief description of the elements:

- `<change-historylist>`
  - Contains `<change-item>` elements, each of which represents a release note, which is information about a single change

- `<change-item>`
  - Contains information about a release note

- `<change-person>`
  - Contains the name of a person who made the change

- `<change-organization>`
  - Contains the name of the organization that requested the change

- `<change-revisionid>`
  - Contains an identifier that is associated with the change

- `<change-request-reference>`
  - Contains information that provides traceability to an external change request or other ticketing system

- `<change-request-system>`
  - Contains the name of the external system that is referenced

- `<change-request-id>`
  - Contains an identifier that is associated with the change request, such as an issue ID or ticket number

- `<change-started>`
  - Contains a string that holds date and time information about when the change was started
<change-completed>
Contains a string that holds date and time information about when the change was finished
</change-completed>

<change-summary>
Contains a descriptive summary of the change
</change-summary>

This figure shows three simple change-items added to a single topic. This topic is used in documentation for two products, A and B.

Figure 5: Excerpt from topic prolog

<prolog>
<!--...-->
<change-historylist>
<change-item product="productA productB">
<change-person>Joan Smith</change-person>
<change-completed>2019-03-23</change-completed>
<change-summary>Made change 1 to both products</change-summary>
<data>Details of change 1</data>
</change-item>
<change-item product="productA">
<change-person>Bill Carter</change-person>
<change-completed>2019-06-07</change-completed>
<change-summary>Made change 2 to product A</change-summary>
<data>Details of change 2</data>
</change-item>
<change-item product="productA productB">
<change-person>Richard Smith</change-person>
<change-completed>2019-07-20</change-completed>
<change-summary>Made change 3 to both products</change-summary>
<data>Details of change 3</data>
</change-item>
</change-historylist>
<!--...-->
</prolog>

3.3 xNAL domain

The DITA xNAL domain specialization defines a number of metadata elements that are useful in representing personal/organizational names and addresses. The metadata can be used to identify authors and content owners. The OASIS xNAL Standard (extensible Name and Address Language) was selected to represent close mappings from the DITA bookmap metadata content model to an existing standard. xNAL is included in the Bookmap document type distributed with this version of DITA.

The OASIS Customer Information Quality (CIQ) standard for global-customer information management contains the definition of the OASIS extensible Name and Address Language (xNAL) metadata elements. Version 2 of the standard states:

The objective of xNAL is to describe a common structure for Personal/Organization Names and Addresses that would enable any applications that want to represent customer names and addresses in a common standard format. The applications could be CRM/e-CRM, Customer Information Systems, Data Quality (Parsing, Matching, Validation, Verification, etc.), Customer Data Warehouses, Postal services, etc.

However, any party for its own purposes and applications can use xNAL grammar or parts of it.

The DITA xNAL specialization is based on the OASIS extensible Name and Address Language metadata elements. Due to differences between the two processing architectures, the DITA xNAL domain does not incorporate all of the definitions from the OASIS xNAL standard directly. Instead, there is a transformational equivalence between the DITA and OASIS xNAL definitions for names and addresses. This equivalence enables XML-aware tools in workflow systems to capture and manipulate names and addresses in a standard manner.
The xNAL domain is available for use in the `<bookmap>` document type. It can be included in any DITA document types that require metadata for names and addresses.

### 3.3.1 xNAL usage guidelines

Extended information and usage examples for DITA bookmark metadata elements associated with OASIS xNAL Standard (extensible Name and Address Language).

DITA bookmarks use a set of elements associated with a subset of the OASIS extensible Name and Address Language (xNAL) specification (Version 2) to denote name and address information related to persons and organizations.

While the elements share element names, and the expectation is that content written using this type of metadata is be straightforward to transform, the element name pairs do not share content models. The difference in content models reflects the different purposes of the two standards. The purpose of the name and address elements in DITA is to identify persons or organizations associated with the creation of a document; the purpose of the name and address elements in xNAL is to support customer resource management.

The examples shown after the table provide sample tagging methods for name and address information, using the DITA elements associated with xNAL.

#### DITA elements associated with xNAL elements

The set of bookmark elements associated with elements from the OASIS extensible Name and Address Language (xNAL) standard are listed in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DITA Elements</th>
<th>xNAL Elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;addressdetails&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;administrativearea&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;authorinformation&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;lastname&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;contactnumber&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;locality&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;contactnumbers&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;middlename&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;country&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;namedetails&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;emailaddress&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;organization&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;emailaddresses&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;organizationinfo&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;firstname&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;organizationname&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;generationidentifier&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;organizationnamedetails&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Example 1: Tagging personal information in DITA

This example shows a way to tag the following personal name and description.

Mr. Ram V. Kumar Jr.
Chief Technologist
MSI Business Solutions

```xml
<authorinformation>
  <personinfo>
    <namedetails>
      <personname>
        <honorific>Mr.</honorific>
      </personname>
    </namedetails>
  </personinfo>
</authorinformation>
```
Example 2: Tagging address information in DITA

This example shows a way to tag the following address.

23 Archer St.
Chatsworth
NSW 2067
Australia

Example 3: Tagging complex name and address information in DITA

This example shows two ways to tag a fairly complex collection of personal, organizational, and address information.

Mr. Samuel L. Johnson Jr.
Chief Technologist
c/o XYZ Corporation
52 New Main St.
Carrboro, NC 27510 USA
e-mail: johnson@example.com
phone: 919-555-7987

This method tags all the organizational information as associated with the identified person.
The following method separates the person and organization information. It might be used if it were necessary to associate address information with organizations rather than persons.

```xml
<authorinformation>
  <personinfo>
    <namedetails>
      <firstname>Samuel</firstname>
      <middlename>L.</middlename>
      <lastname>Johnson</lastname>
      <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
      <otherinfo>Chief Technologist</otherinfo>
    </namedetails>
    <contactnumbers>
      <contactnumber>919-555-7987</contactnumber>
    </contactnumbers>
    <emailaddresses>
      <emailaddress>johnson@example.com</emailaddress>
    </emailaddresses>
  </personinfo>
  <organizationinfo>
    <namedetails>
      <organizationnamedetails>
        <organizationname>XYZ Corporation</organizationname>
        <otherinfo>c/o</otherinfo>
      </organizationnamedetails>
    </namedetails>
    <addressdetails>
      <thoroughfare>52 New Main St.</thoroughfare>
      <locality>
        <localityname>Carrboro</localityname>
        <postalcode>27510</postalcode>
      </locality>
      <administrativearea>NC</administrativearea>
      <country>USA</country>
    </addressdetails>
  </organizationinfo>
</authorinformation>
```
4 Element reference

This section contains topics for each element defined in the technical content specializations. These elements include the original concept, task, and reference specializations, as well as specializations added in later releases. It also includes domains designed primarily for technical content.

4.1 Elements, A to Z

This section provides an alphabetized list of links to all elements in the specification.

- 4.2.3.2.1 abbreviated-form (74)
- 4.2.1.1.1 abbrevlist (33)
- 4.3.12.2 addressdetails (155)
- 4.3.12.3 administrativearea (156)
- 4.2.1.1.2 amendments (33)
- 4.3.5.1 apiname (121)
- 4.2.1.1.3 appendices (34)
- 4.2.1.1.4 appendix (34)
- 4.2.1.2.1 approved (47)
- 4.3.12.1 authorinformation (155)
- 4.2.1.1.6 backmatter (36)
- 4.2.1.1.7 bibliolist (36)
- 4.2.1.1.8 bookabstract (37)
- 4.2.1.2.2 bookchangehistory (47)
- 4.2.1.2.3 bookevent (48)
- 4.2.1.2.4 bookeventtype (49)
- 4.2.1.2.5 bookid (49)
- 4.2.1.1.9 booklibrary (37)
- 4.2.1.1.10 booklist (38)
- 4.2.1.1.11 booklists (38)
- 4.2.1.1.5 bookmap (35)
- 4.2.1.2.6 bookmeta (49)
- 4.2.1.2.7 booknumber (50)
- 4.2.1.2.8 bookowner (51)
- 4.2.1.2.9 bookpartno (51)
- 4.2.1.2.10 bookrestriction (52)
- 4.2.1.2.11 bookrights (52)
- 4.2.1.1.12 booktitle (39)
- 4.2.1.1.13 booktitlealt (39)
- 4.2.6.1 cause (102)
- 4.3.6.1 change-completed (125)
- 4.3.6.2 change-historylist (126)
- 4.3.6.3 change-item (127)
- 4.3.6.4 change-organization (127)
- 4.3.6.5 change-person (127)
- 4.3.6.6 change-request-id (128)
4.2.6.7 responsibleParty (108)
4.2.15 result (93)
4.2.1.2.27 reviewed (59)
4.2.1.2.28 revisionid (59)
4.3.10.5 screen (150)
4.3.9.15 sep (147)
4.3.10.4 shortcut (149)
4.2.1.2.29 started (59)
4.2.5.16 step (93)
4.2.5.17 stepresult (94)
4.2.5.19 steps-informal (95)
4.2.5.22 steps-unordered (98)
4.2.5.18 steps (95)
4.2.5.20 stepsection (96)
4.2.5.21 steptroubleshooting (97)
4.2.5.23 stepxmp (98)
4.2.1.2.30 summary (60)
4.3.8.1 svg-container (133)
4.3.8.2 svgref (135)
4.3.9.8 synblk (142)
4.3.9.9 synnote (143)
4.3.9.10 synnoteref (143)
4.3.9.1 synph (137)
4.3.9.2 syntaxdiagram (138)
4.3.7.8 systemoutput (133)
4.2.1.2.26 tablelist (45)
4.2.5.24 task (99)
4.2.5.25 taskbody (99)
4.2.5.27 tutorialinfo (102)
4.2.5.26 tasktroubleshooting (101)
4.2.1.2.31 tested (60)
4.3.11.3 textentity (152)
4.3.12.24 thoroughfare (166)
4.2.1.2.27 toc (46)
4.2.1.2.28 trademarklist (46)
4.2.6.8 troublebody (108)
4.2.6.9 troubleshooting (108)
4.2.6.10 troubleSolution (110)
4.2.5.27 tutorialinfo (102)
4.3.10.1 uicontrol (148)
4.3.12.25 url (167)
4.3.12.26 urls (167)
4.3.7.7 userinput (132)
4.3.9.12 var (145)
4.3.7.5 varname (132)
4.2.1.2.32 volume (61)
4.3.10.2 wintitle (149)
4.3.11.4 xmlatt (152)
4.2 Topic and map specializations

Content TBD

4.2.1 Bookmap elements

Elements in the bookmap section are used to organize DITA content into book form. They include elements for dividing up content, such as chapter and appendix, as well as metadata specific to publishing.

4.2.1.1 Bookmap content elements

The Bookmap specialization of `<map>` supports standard book production for collections of DITA topics. The OASIS document type for the bookmap specialization also includes substantial book metadata for describing authors, based on the eXtensible Name and Address Language, or xNAL.

4.2.1.1.1 `<abbrevlist>`

The `<abbrevlist>` element references a list of abbreviations.

Processing expectations

When the @href attribute is not specified, a processor might generate a list of abbreviations at the specified location in the map.

Specialization hierarchy

The `<abbrevlist>` element is specialized from `<topicref>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @keyref (196).

For this element, the @href attribute references a manual listing for the current element. If the @href attribute is not specified, processors can choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element.

Example

```xml
<abbrevlist href="abbrev.dita"/>
```

4.2.1.2 `<amendments>`

The `<amendments>` element references a list of amendments or updates to the book.

Processing expectations

When the @href attribute is not specified, a processor might generate a list of amendments or updates at the specified location in the map.
**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<amendments>` element is specialized from `<topicref>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and `@keyref` (196).

**Example**

The following code sample specifies that a change history list is generated in the publication front matter. The content of the change history list is contained in the DITA resource referenced by `@keyref`.

```xml
<frontmatter>
  <booklists>
    <amendments keyref="change-history"/>
  </booklists>
</frontmatter>
```

If the `<amendments>` element did not reference a resource, the change history list would be autogenerated by the processor.

### 4.2.1.1.3 `<appendices>`

The `<appendices>` element is an optional wrapper for `<appendix>` elements within a bookmap.

**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<appendices>` element is specialized from `<topicref>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and `@keyref` (196).

**Example**

```xml
<appendices toc="yes" deliveryTarget="html">
  <topicmeta>
    <navtitle>Appendices</navtitle>
  </topicmeta>
  <appendix href="return-codes.dita"/>
  <appendix href="messages.dita"/>
  <appendix href="extra-info.dita"/>
</appendices>
```

### 4.2.1.1.4 `<appendix>`

The `<appendix>` element references a topic as an appendix within a book.

**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<appendix>` element is specialized from `<topicref>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.
Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @keyref (196).

Example

Appendix topics that include subtopics:

```xml
<appendix href="intro.dita">
  <topicref href="caring.dita"/>
  <topicref href="feeding.dita"/>
</appendix>
<appendix href="setup.dita">
  <topicref href="prereq.dita"/>
  <topicref href="download.dita"/>
</appendix>
```

Appendix that references a DITA map of content:

```xml
<appendix href="intro.ditamap" format="ditamap"/>
```

4.2.1.1.5 <bookmap>

The <bookmap> element is a map specialization used to describe the relationships among a set of DITA topics intended to be configured as a traditional book.

Usage information

Book maps consist of references to topics organized as book content. The topic references therefore are labeled according to the book components they point to, such as book title, front matter, chapter, and appendix.

Specialization hierarchy

The <bookmap> element is specialized from <map>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), common map attributes (190), architectural attributes (190), @format (195), @scope (200), and @type (202).

Example

```xml
<bookmap xml:lang="en-us">
  <booktitle>
    <booklibrary>Books about stuff</booklibrary>
    <mainbooktitle>A book about one thing</mainbooktitle>
  </booktitle>
  <bookmeta>
    <bookrights>
      <copyrfirst>2016</copyrfirst>
      <copyrlast>2020</copyrlast>
    </bookrights>
    <bookowner>
      <organization>OASIS</organization>
    </bookowner>
  </bookmeta>
  <booklists>
    <toc/>
  </booklists>
</bookmap>
```
4.2.1.1.6 <backmatter>
The <backmatter> element contains the material that follows the main body of a document and any appendices. Back matter might include items such as a colophon, legal notices, and book lists such as a glossary or an index.

Specialization hierarchy
The <backmatter> element is specialized from <topicref>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), universal attributes (185), @format (195), @keyref (196), @scope (200), and @type (202).

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.5 bookmap (35).

4.2.1.1.7 <bibliolist>
The <bibliolist> element references a topic containing a list of bibliographic entries within the book.

Processing expectations

Processing expectations
When the @href attribute is not specified, a processor might generate a list of bibliographic entries at the specified location in the map.

Specialization hierarchy
The <bibliolist> element is specialized from <topicref>. It is defined in the bookmap module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @keyref (196).

For this element, the @href attribute references a manual listing for the current element. If the @href attribute is not specified, processors can choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element.

Example

```xml
<bookmap>
  <!-- ... -->
  <backmatter>
    <amendments href="updatesToTheBook.dita"/>
    <booklists>
      <trademarklist href="listoftrademarks.dita"/>
      <bibliolist href="bibliography.dita"/>
      <indexlist/>
    </booklists>
  </backmatter>
</bookmap>
```

4.2.1.1.8 <bookabstract>
The <bookabstract> element references a topic used within a bookmap as a brief summary of the book's content.

Usage information
A book abstract is generally rendered as part of the book's front matter. It is used to help the reader quickly evaluate the book's purpose.

Specialization hierarchy
The <bookabstract> element is specialized from <topicref>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @keyref (196).

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.5 bookmap (35).

4.2.1.1.9 <booklibrary>
The <booklibrary> element contains the library information for a book.

Usage information
Library entries contain information about the series, library, or collection of documents to which the book belongs.

Specialization hierarchy
The <booklibrary> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the bookmap module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.1.5 bookmap (35).

4.2.1.1.10 <booklist>
The <booklist> element references a topic or map containing a list of items within the book.

Usage information
The <booklist> element is a general purpose element, designed for use in specializations, that references a topic or map containing a list of items within the book. For example, it could be used to reference a topic that contains a list of authors for the book. When a more specific element is already available, such as <tablelist> for a list of tables, use that element instead.

Specialization hierarchy
The <booklist> element is specialized from <topicref>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @keyref (196).

For this element, the @href attribute references a manual listing for the current element. If the @href attribute is not specified, processors can choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element.

Example
In this case the <booklist> element references a topic that contains a list of authors of topics in this document.

```xml
<booklists>
  <toc/>
  <tablelist/>
  <booklist href="authors.dita">
    <topicmeta>
      <navtitle>List of authors</navtitle>
    </topicmeta>
  </booklist>
</booklists>
```

4.2.1.11 <booklists>
The <booklists> element references lists of various kinds within the book.

Processing expectations
The <booklists> element indicates to processors that lists are to be rendered or generated at that location in the front or back matter.

Specialization hierarchy
The <booklists> element is specialized from <topicref>. It is defined in the bookmap module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), common map attributes (191), @format (195), @keyref (196), @scope (200), and @type (202).

Example
The following code sample indicates that lists are generated in the front and back matter of the publication.

```xml
<bookmap>
  <booktitle>
    <mainbooktitle>Sample publication</mainbooktitle>
  </booktitle>
  <frontmatter>
    <booklists>
      <toc>
        <amendments/>
        <figurelist/>
        <tablelist/>
      </toc>
    </booklists>
  </frontmatter>
  ...
  <backmatter>
    <booklists>
      <abbrevlist/>
      <glossarylist/>
      <indexlist/>
    </booklists>
  </backmatter>
</bookmap>
```

4.2.1.12 <booktitle>
The <booktitle> element contains the title information for a book, including the library title, main title, subtitle, and any other titles.

Specialization hierarchy
The <booktitle> element is specialized from <title>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) (without the metadata attribute group) and @base (186).

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.5 bookmap (35).

4.2.1.13 <booktitlealt>
The <booktitlealt> element contains an alternative title, subtitle, or short title for a book.

Specialization hierarchy
The <booktitlealt> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).
Example

```xml
<bookmap>
  <booktitle>
    <mainbooktitle>This is my big and fancy book</mainbooktitle>
    <booktitlealt>Shorter title</booktitlealt>
  </booktitle>
</bookmap>
```

4.2.1.14 <chapter>
The `<chapter>` element references a topic or map as a chapter within a book.

Specialization hierarchy
The `<chapter>` element is specialized from `<topicref>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and `@keyref` (196).

Example
Chapter topics that include subtopics:

```xml
<chapter href="intro.dita">
  <topicref href="caring.dita"/>
  <topicref href="feeding.dita"/>
</chapter>
<chapter href="setup.dita">
  <topicref href="prereq.dita"/>
  <topicref href="download.dita"/>
</chapter>
```

Chapter that references a DITA map of content:

```xml
<chapter href="intro.ditamap" format="ditamap"/>
```

4.2.1.15 <colophon>
The `<colophon>` element references a topic describing how this document was created.

Usage information
In publishing, a colophon describes details of the production of a book. This information generally includes the typefaces used, and often the names of their designers; the paper, ink and details of the binding materials and methods might also receive mention. In the case of technical books, a colophon might specify the software used to prepare the text and diagrams for publication. The `<colophon>` can appear in the `<frontmatter>` or `<backmatter>`.

Specialization hierarchy
The `<colophon>` element is specialized from `<topicref>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.
Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @keyref (196).

Example

```xml
<bookmap>
  <title>Sample book</title>
  <!-- ... -->
  <backmatter>
    <colophon href="ProdNotes.dita">
      <topicmeta>
        <navtitle>Production Notes</navtitle>
      </topicmeta>
    </colophon>
  </backmatter>
</bookmap>
```

4.2.1.1.16 <dedication>

The `<dedication>` element references a topic containing a dedication for the book, such as to a person or group.

Specialization hierarchy

The `<dedication>` element is specialized from `<topicref>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @keyref (196).

Example

```xml
<frontmatter>
  <dedication href="dtm.dita">
    <topicmeta>
      <navtitle>Dedicated to Mother</navtitle>
    </topicmeta>
  </dedication>
</frontmatter>
```

4.2.1.1.17 <draftintro>

The `<draftintro>` element references a topic used as an introduction to the draft of this book.

Specialization hierarchy

The `<draftintro>` element is specialized from `<topicref>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @keyref (196).
Example

```xml
<frontmatter>
  <draftintro href="introducing.dita">
    <topicmeta>
      <navtitle>Introduction to this draft</navtitle>
    </topicmeta>
  </draftintro>
</frontmatter>
```

4.2.1.18 `<figurelist>`
The `<figurelist>` element references a topic containing a list of figures in the book.

**Processing expectations**
When the `@href` attribute is not specified, a processor might generate a list of figures at the specified location in the map.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The `<figurelist>` element is specialized from `<topicref>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and `@keyref` (196).

For this element, the `@href` attribute references a manual listing for the current element. If the `@href` attribute is not specified, processors can choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element.

**Example**
See the example in 4.2.1.5 bookmap (35).

4.2.1.19 `<frontmatter>`
The `<frontmatter>` element contains the material that precedes the main body of a document.

**Usage information**
The front matter might include items such as an abstract, a preface, and various types of book lists such as a `<toc>`, `<tablelist>`, or `<figurelist>`.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The `<frontmatter>` element is specialized from `<topicref>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), universal attributes (185), `@format` (195), `@keyref` (196), `@scope` (200), and `@type` (202).

**Example**
See the example in 4.2.1.5 bookmap (35).
4.2.1.20 <glossarylist>
The <glossarylist> element references a list of glossary entries within the book.

Processing expectations
When the @href attribute is not specified, a processor might generate a list of glossary entries at the specified location in the map.

Specialization hierarchy
The <glossarylist> element is specialized from <topicref>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @keyref (196).

For this element, the @href attribute references a manual listing for the current element. If the @href attribute is not specified, processors can choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element.

Example
See 4.2.1.1.6 backmatter (36).

4.2.1.21 <indexlist>
The <indexlist> element indicates to the processing software that the author wants an index at the particular location.

Processing expectations
When the @href attribute is not specified, a processor might generate an index at the specified location in the map. If the @href attribute is specified, the referenced topic or map contains a manually created index.

Specialization hierarchy
The <indexlist> element is specialized from <topicref>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @keyref (196).

For this element, the @href attribute references a manual listing for the current element. If the @href attribute is not specified, processors can choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element.

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.5 bookmap (35).
4.2.1.22 <mainbooktitle>
The <mainbooktitle> element contains the primary title for a book.

Specialization hierarchy
The <mainbooktitle> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.1.5 bookmap (35).

4.2.1.1.23 <notices>
The <notices> element references a topic containing special notice information, for example, legal notices about supplementary copyrights and trademarks associated with the book.

Specialization hierarchy
The <notices> element is specialized from <topicref>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @keyref (196).

Example
This example references a notices topic that contains legal content.

```xml
<backmatter>
  <notices href="notices.dita" navtitle="Legal notices">
    <topicmeta>
      <navtitle>Legal notices</navtitle>
    </topicmeta>
    </notices>
  <booklists>
    <!-- Index, glossary, or other lists -->
  </booklists>
</backmatter>
```

4.2.1.24 <part>
The <part> element references topic or a map as a part within a book.

Usage information
Use <part> to divide a document's chapters into logical groupings. For example, in a document that contains both guide and reference information, you can define two parts, one containing the guide information and the other containing the reference information.

Specialization hierarchy
The <part> element is specialized from <topicref>. It is defined in the bookmap module.
Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @keyref (196).

Example

Part topics that include chapters and subtopics:

```xml
<part href="guide.dita">
  <chapter href="intro.dita">
    <topicref href="caring.dita"/>
    <topicref href="feeding.dita"/>
  </chapter>
  <chapter href="setup.dita">
    <topicref href="prereq.dita"/>
    <topicref href="download.dita"/>
  </chapter>
</part>

<part href="ref.dita">
  <chapter href="commands.dita">
    <topicref href="care.dita"/>
    <topicref href="feed.dita"/>
  </chapter>
  <chapter href="apis.dita">
    <topicref href="acare.dita"/>
    <topicref href="afeed.dita"/>
  </chapter>
</part>
```

Parts that reference DITA maps of content:

```xml
<part href="intro.ditamap" format="ditamap"/>
<part href="guide.ditamap" format="ditamap"/>
```

4.2.1.1.25 <preface>

The <preface> element references a topic or map containing introductory information about a book, such as the purpose and structure of the document.

Specialization hierarchy

The <preface> element is specialized from <topicref>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @keyref (196).

Example

See the example in 4.2.1.5 bookmap (35).

4.2.1.1.26 <tablelist>

The <tablelist> element references a topic that contains a list of tables within the book.

Processing expectations

When the @href attribute is not specified, a processor might generate a list of tables at the specified location in the map.
Specialization hierarchy
The `<tablelist>` element is specialized from `<topicref>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and `@keyref` (196).

For this element, the `@href` attribute references a manual listing for the current element. If the `@href` attribute is not specified, processors can choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element.

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.1.5 bookmap (35).

4.2.1.1.27 `<toc>`
The `<toc>` element indicates to the processing software that the author wants a table of contents generated at the particular location.

Processing expectations
When the `@href` attribute is not specified, a processor might generate a table of contents at the specified location in the map. If the `@href` attribute is specified, the referenced topic or map contains a manually created table of contents.

Specialization hierarchy
The `<toc>` element is specialized from `<topicref>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and `@keyref` (196).

For this element, the `@href` attribute references a manual listing for the current element. If the `@href` attribute is not specified, processors can choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element.

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.1.5 bookmap (35).

4.2.1.1.28 `<trademarklist>`
The `<trademarklist>` element references a topic that contains a list of trademarks within the book.

Processing expectations
When the `@href` attribute is not specified, a processor might generate a list of trademarks at the specified location in the map.

Specialization hierarchy
The `<trademarklist>` element is specialized from `<topicref>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.
Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: common map attributes (190), link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @keyref (196).

For this element, the @href attribute references a manual listing for the current element. If the @href attribute is not specified, processors can choose to generate an appropriate listing for this element.

Example

See the example in 4.2.1.1.5 bookmap (35).

4.2.1.2 Book map metadata elements

The book map specialization supports standard book production. This section contains the metadata elements used by bookmap to store book-related metadata.

Note

The OASIS document type for the bookmap specialization includes the xNAL domain for describing the author or authors of a document. All elements that appear in that domain (the <authorinformation> element and all of its descendants) are described in the xNAL domain section, rather than in this bookmap metadata section.

4.2.1.2.1 <approved>

The <approved> element contains information about when and by whom the book was approved during its publication history.

Specialization hierarchy

The <approved> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

See the example in 4.2.1.2.2 bookchangehistory (47).

4.2.1.2.2 <bookchangehistory>

The <bookchangehistory> element contains information about a book's publishing lifecycle

Usage information

This element contains information about the history of the book's creation and publishing lifecycle, including who wrote, reviewed, edited, and tested the book. It also specifies when these events took place.

Specialization hierarchy

The <bookchangehistory> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

```xml
<bookmeta>
    <bookchangehistory>
        <reviewed>
            <started><year>2019</year><month>10</month></started>
            <completed><year>2020</year><month>01</month></completed>
        </reviewed>
        <edited>
            <person>Joe T. Editor</person>
            <completed><year>2020</year><month>03</month><day>15</day></completed>
        </edited>
        <tested>
            <organization>OASIS</organization>
            <completed><year>2020</year><month>04</month></completed>
        </tested>
        <approved>
            <organization>OASIS</organization>
            <completed><year>2020</year><month>05</month></completed>
        </approved>
        <bookevent>
            <bookeventtype name="Type of Major Event"/>
            <completed><year>2021</year></completed>
        </bookevent>
    </bookchangehistory>
</bookmeta>
```

4.2.1.2.3 <bookevent>
The `<bookevent>` element indicates a general event in the publication history of a book.

Usage information
This element is appropriate for specialization if the current set of specific book event types does not meet your needs. If an element already exists to describe a specific type of event, such as `<reviewed>`, `<edited>`, or `<approved>`, use that element instead.

Specialization hierarchy
The `<bookevent>` element is specialized from `<data>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.2.2 bookchangehistory (47).
4.2.1.2.4 <bookeventtype>
The <bookeventtype> element indicates the specific nature of a <bookevent>, such as updated, indexed, or deprecated.

Usage information
The required @name attribute indicates the event's type.

Specialization hierarchy
The <bookeventtype> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).
For this element, the @name attribute is required.

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.2.2 bookchangehistory (47).

4.2.1.2.5 <bookid>
The <bookid> element contains the publisher's identification information for the book, such as part number, edition number, or ISBN number.

Specialization hierarchy
The <bookid> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example
See 4.2.1.2.6 bookmeta (49).

4.2.1.2.6 <bookmeta>
The <bookmeta> element contains metadata about the book, such as copyright information, author information, and any classifications.

Specialization hierarchy
The <bookmeta> element is specialized from <topicmeta>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).
Example

In this example:

- The `<authorinformation>` contains the content for a reader's comment form; the `<maintainer>` element references that author information to create the reader comment form.
- The `<prodinfo>` element contains the book's product information. This includes the product name, and the version, release, and modification information.
- The `<bookid>` element contains the book's form number and part number information. The `<maintainer>` element contains information about the current maintainer of the book; it might reference the `<authorinformation>` element to provide detailed information about an author that is also the current maintainer.
- The `<bookrights>` element contains the book's copyright information.

This example makes heavy use of `<authorinformation>`, which is a domain element that OASIS delivers only with the `<bookmap>` specialization. However, other DTD, XSD Schema, or RELAX NG implementations of `<bookmap>` may not include the domain with `<authorinformation>`; likewise, `<authorinformation>` may be included in other document types.

```xml
<bookmeta>
  <authorinformation id="rcf">
    <organizationinfo>
      <namedetails>
        <organizationnamedetails>
          <organizationname>IBM</organizationname>
        </organizationnamedetails>
      </namedetails>
      <addressdetails>ATTN: Dept XYZ<thoroughfare>3905 37th Street NW</thoroughfare><locality>Rochester, MN</locality><postalcode>55901</postalcode></addressdetails>
      <country>USA</country>
    </addressdetails>
    <contactnumbers>
      <contactnumber type="telephone">800-555-1212</contactnumber>
      <contactnumber type="fax">800-555-1213</contactnumber>
    </contactnumbers>
    <emailaddresses><emailaddress>fred@example.com</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
    <urls><url>http://www.example.com/fred</url></urls>
  </organizationinfo>
  <prodinfo>
    <prodname>My Product</prodname>
    <vrmlist><vrm release="1" version="3"/></vrmlist>
  </prodinfo>
</bookmeta>
```

4.2.1.2.7 `<booknumber>`

The `<booknumber>` element contains the book's form number, such as SC21-1920.

Specialization hierarchy

The `<booknumber>` element is specialized from `<data>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example
In this example, "99F1234" is a part number assigned to this book by the publisher, while SC21-1234-00 is a number that identifies this book among all of the author's works.

```xml
<bookmeta>
  <bookid>
    <bookpartno>99F1234</bookpartno>
    <booknumber>SC21-1234-00</booknumber>
  </bookid>
</bookmeta>
```

4.2.1.2.8 <bookowner>
The <bookowner> element specifies the owner of the book's copyright.

Specialization hierarchy
The <bookowner> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

```xml
<bookmeta>
  <bookrights>
    <copyrfirst><year>2016</year></copyrfirst>
    <copyrlast><year>2020</year></copyrlast>
    <bookowner>
      <organization>Example Corporation</organization>
    </bookowner>
  </bookrights>
</bookmeta>
```

4.2.1.2.9 <bookpartno>
The <bookpartno> element contains the book's part number, such as 99F1234.

Usage information
A publisher might use a number like this one to identify a book for tracking purposes.

Specialization hierarchy
The <bookpartno> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).
Example

In this example, "99F1234" is a part number assigned to this book by the publisher, while SC21-1234-00 is a number that identifies this book among all of the author's works.

```xml
<bookmeta>
  <bookid>
    <bookpartno>99F1234</bookpartno>
    <booknumber>SC21-1234-00</booknumber>
  </bookid>
</bookmeta>
```

4.2.1.2.10 <bookrestriction>

The `<bookrestriction>` element specifies whether the book is classified or restricted in some way.

Specialization hierarchy

The `<bookrestriction>` element is specialized from `<data>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

For this element, the `@value` attribute specifies any restrictions on the use of the material, such as declaring the information confidential or for licensed use only.

Example

```xml
<bookrights>
  <copyrfirst><year>2016</year></copyrfirst>
  <copyrlast><year>2020</year></copyrlast>
  <bookowner><organization>Example Corporation</organization></bookowner>
  <bookrestriction value="unclassified"/>
</bookrights>
```

4.2.1.2.11 <bookrights>

The `<bookrights>` element contains the information about the legal rights associated with the book, including copyright dates and owners.

Specialization hierarchy

The `<bookrights>` element is specialized from `<data>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

See 4.2.1.2.6 bookmeta (49).
4.2.1.2.12 <completed>
The <completed> element indicates a completion date for some type of book event, such as a review, editing, or testing.

Specialization hierarchy
The <completed> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.2.2 bookchangehistory (47).

4.2.1.2.13 <copyrfirst>
The <copyrfirst> element contains the copyright year, or the first copyright year within a multi-year copyright statement.

Specialization hierarchy
The <copyrfirst> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.5 bookmap (35).

4.2.1.2.14 <copyrlast>
The <copyrlast> element contains the last copyright year within a multiyear copyright statement.

Specialization hierarchy
The <copyrlast> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.5 bookmap (35).
4.2.1.2.15 <day>
The <day> element denotes a day of the month.

Specialization hierarchy
The <day> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example

```xml
<bookchangehistory>
  <edited>
    <person>Joe T. Editor</person>
    <completed><year>2020</year><month>10</month><day>13</day></completed>
  </edited>
</bookchangehistory>
```

4.2.1.2.16 <edited>
The <edited> element contains information about when and by whom the book was edited during its publication history.

Specialization hierarchy
The <edited> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.2 bookchangehistory (47).

4.2.1.2.17 <edition>
The <edition> element contains the edition number information, such as First Edition or Third Edition, used by a publisher to identify a book.

Specialization hierarchy
The <edition> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

```xml
<bookmeta>
  <bookid>
  </bookid>
</bookmeta>
```
4.2.1.2.18 <isbn>

**Specialization hierarchy**
The `<isbn>` element is specialized from `<data>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

**Example**
```xml
<bookmeta>
  <bookid>
    <isbn>978-0141000039</isbn>
  </bookid>
</bookmeta>
```

4.2.1.2.19 <maintainer>
The `<maintainer>` element contains information about who maintains the document. The maintainer might be an organization or a person.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The `<maintainer>` element is specialized from `<data>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

**Example**
See the example in 4.2.1.2.6 bookmeta (49).

4.2.1.2.20 <month>
The `<month>` element denotes a month of the year.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The `<month>` element is specialized from `<ph>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and `@keyref` (196).
Example

```xml
<bookchangehistory>
  <edited>
    <person>Joe T. Editor</person>
    <completed><year>2020</year><month>10</month><day>13</day></completed>
  </edited>
</bookchangehistory>
```

4.2.1.2.21 `<organization>`
The `<organization>` element contains the name of an organization.

Usage information
Note that unlike `<organizationname>`, the `<organization>` element is not restricted to use within `<authorinformation`; it does not have to contain the name of an authoring organization.

Specialization hierarchy
The `<organization>` element is specialized from `<data>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

```xml
<bookmeta>
  <bookrights>
    <copyrfirst><year>2016</year></copyrfirst>
    <copyrlast><year>2020</year></copyrlast>
    <bookowner><organization>OASIS</organization></bookowner>
  </bookrights>
</bookmeta>
```

4.2.1.2.22 `<person>`
The `<person>` element contains information about the name of a person.

Usage information
Note that unlike the `<personname>` element, the `<person>` element is not restricted to describing the names of authors.

Specialization hierarchy
The `<person>` element is specialized from `<data>`. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).
4.2.1.2.23 <printlocation>
The <printlocation> element indicates the location where the book was printed.

**Usage information**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Comment by robander on 20 May 2021</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>This seems like an odd restriction / not restriction, if we need it then it should be phrased like other typical-use statements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disposition:</strong> Unassigned</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Customarily, the content is restricted to the name of the country.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The <printlocation> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

**Example**
See the example in 4.2.1.2.25 publisherinformation (58).

4.2.1.2.24 <published>
The <published> element contains information about the person or organization publishing the book, the dates when it was started and completed, and any special restrictions associated with it.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The <published> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

**Example**
See the example in 4.2.1.2.25 publisherinformation (58).
4.2.1.2.25 <publisherinformation>
The <publisherinformation> element contains information about what group or person published the book, where it was published, and certain details about its publication history.

Usage information
Other publication history information is found in the <bookchangehistory> element.

Specialization hierarchy
The <publisherinformation> element is specialized from <publisher>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example
```xml
<bookmeta>
  <publisherinformation>
    <organization>Example Publishers</organization>
    <printlocation>Austin, TX</printlocation>
    <published>
      <publishtype value="general"/>
      <completed><year>1977</year></completed>
    </published>
  </publisherinformation>
</bookmeta>
```

4.2.1.2.26 <publishtype>
The <publishtype> element indicates whether the book is generally available from the publisher or is restricted in some way.

Usage information
The @value attribute indicates the restrictions, such as beta release, limited availability, or general availability.

Specialization hierarchy
The <publishtype> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

For this element, the @value attribute specifies any restrictions on the availability of the publication.

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.2.25 publisherinformation (58).
4.2.1.2.27 <reviewed>
The <reviewed> element contains information about when and by whom the book was reviewed during its publication history.

Specialization hierarchy
The <reviewed> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example
See the example in 4.2.1.2.2 bookchangehistory (47).

4.2.1.2.28 <revisionid>
The <revisionid> element indicates the revision number or revision ID of the book.

Processing expectations
A processor determines how or whether the revision level is displayed. Common methods include using a dash, for example “-01”, or a period, such as “.01”.

Specialization hierarchy
The <revisionid> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
<bookchangehistory>
  <edited>
    <person>Joe T. Editor</person>
    <revisionid>1</revisionid>
    <completed><year>2020</year><month>03</month><day>15</day></completed>
  </edited>
  <edited>
    <person>Joe T. Editor</person>
    <revisionid>2</revisionid>
    <completed><year>2020</year><month>10</month><day>13</day></completed>
  </edited>
</bookchangehistory>

4.2.1.2.29 <started>
The <started> element indicates a start date for some type of book event, such as a review, editing, or testing.

Specialization hierarchy
The <started> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the bookmap module.
**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

**Example**
See the example in 4.2.1.2.2 bookchangehistory (47).

4.2.1.2.30 <summary>
The <summary> element contains a text summary associated with a book event (such as <approved> or <reviewed>) or with the list of copyrights for the book.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The <summary> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

**Example**

```xml
<bookchangehistory>
  <edited>
    <person>Joe T. Editor</person>
    <revisionid>1</revisionid>
    <completed><year>2020</year><month>03</month><day>15</day></completed>
    <summary>Added several new topics</summary>
  </edited>
  <edited>
    <person>Joe T. Editor</person>
    <revisionid>2</revisionid>
    <completed><year>2020</year><month>10</month><day>13</day></completed>
    <summary>Fixed a few typos</summary>
  </edited>
</bookchangehistory>
```

4.2.1.2.31 <tested>
The <tested> element contains information about when and by whom the book was tested during its publication history.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The <tested> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

**Example**
See the example in 4.2.1.2.2 bookchangehistory (47).
4.2.1.2.32 <volume>
The <volume> element contains the book's volume number, such as "2" to represent Volume 2.

Specialization hierarchy
The <volume> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example
```xml
<bookmeta>
  <bookid>
    <volume>2</volume>
  </bookid>
</bookmeta>
```

4.2.1.2.33 <year>
The <year> element denotes a year.

Specialization hierarchy
The <year> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the bookmap module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
```xml
<bookchangehistory>
  <edited>
    <person>Joe T. Editor</person>
    <completed>
      <year>2020</year>
      <month>10</month>
      <day>13</day>
    </completed>
  </edited>
</bookchangehistory>
```

4.2.2 Concept elements
Concept elements provide the fundamental structure for concept topics. Concept topics are useful for introducing the background or overview information for task or reference topics.

4.2.2.1 <concept>
The <concept> element is the top-level element for a topic that answers the question “what is?”

Usage information
Concepts provide background information that users must know before they can successfully work with a product or interface. Often, a concept is an extended definition of a major abstraction such as a process or function. It might also have an example or a graphic.
**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<concept>` element is specialized from `<topic>`. It is defined in the concept module.

**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and architectural attributes (190).

For this element, the `@id` attribute is required.

**Example**

The following code sample shows a concept topic:

```xml
<concept id="concept">
  <title>DITA concept topic</title>
  <shortdesc>The concept topic answers the question <q>what is?</q></shortdesc>
  <conbody>
    Concept topics provide background information that users must know before they can successfully work with a product or interface. Often, a concept is an extended definition of a major abstraction such as a process or function. It might also have an example or a graphic.
  </conbody>
</concept>
```

4.2.2.2 `<conbody>`

The `<conbody>` element contains the main content of a concept topic.

**Usage information**

The `<conbody>` element allows paragraphs, lists, and other elements as well as sections and examples. However, `<conbody>` element has a restriction that a `<section>` or an `<example>` can be followed only by other sections, examples, or `<conbodydiv>` elements that group sections and examples.

**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<conbody>` element is specialized from `<body>`. It is defined in the concept module.

**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

**Example**

See `<concept>` (61).

4.2.2.3 `<conbodydiv>`

The `<conbodydiv>` element provides an container for content that might be grouped within a concept topic.

**Usage information**

There are no additional semantics attached to the `<conbodydiv>` element. It is purely a grouping element that provided to help organize content for reuse.
The parent <conbody> element has a restriction that <section> or <example> elements can only be followed by other sections or examples. The <conbodydiv> element, which allows groupings of sections and examples, keeps the same restriction in place; once used, only sections, examples, or other <conbodydiv> groups are allowed.

Specialization hierarchy
The <conbodydiv> element is specialized from <bodydiv>. It is defined in the concept module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
The following code sample shows how a <conbodydiv> element can be used to group content for reuse:

```xml
<conbody>
  <conbodydiv id="concept-purpose-content-model">
    <section id="purpose">
      <title>Purpose</title>
      <p>Concept topics serve a variety of purposes:</p>
    </section>
    <section id="content-model">
      <title>Content model</title>
      <p>The body of a concept topic can contain the following document structures:</p>
    </section>
  </conbodydiv>
</conbody>
```

4.2.3 Glossary elements
Glossary elements include those elements designed to specify terms and their definitions, as well as elements that are designed to group, reference, or otherwise make use of information in the glossentry topic.

4.2.3.1 Glossentry elements
Use the glossary entry topic type to define glossary terms. Each glossentry topic should define a single sense of a term.

4.2.3.1.1 <glossentry>
The <glossentry> element defines a single sense of a glossary term. Glossary entries for different term senses can be reused independently of one another.

Processing expectations
The recommended (but not required) book processing is to sort and group glossary entries based on the localized term so a back-of-the-book glossary can contain a collated list of terms with the definitions of the individual senses of each term indented under the term. The glossary can have a different organization in different languages depending on the translation of the terms.

One possible implementation of a glossary in online processing is to associate a hotspot for mentions of terms in <term> elements and display the definition on hover or click.
**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<glossentry>` element is specialized from `<concept>`; it is defined in the glossary entry module. The `<concept>` element is specialized from `<topic>`; it is defined in the concept module.

**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and architectural attributes (190).

For this element, the `@id` attribute is required.

**Example**

**Figure 6: The glossary term "USB flash drive" with additional information**

```xml
<glossentry id="usbfd">
  <glossterm>USB flash drive</glossterm>
  <glossdef>A small portable drive.</glossdef>
  <glossBody>
    <glossPartOfSpeech value="noun"/>
    <glossUsage>Do not provide in upper case (as in "USB Flash Drive") because that suggests a trademark.</glossUsage>
    <glossAlt>
      <glossAcronym>UFD</glossAcronym>
      <glossUsage>Explain the acronym on first occurrence.</glossUsage>
    </glossAlt>
    <glossAlt id="memoryStick">
      <glossSynonym>memory stick</glossSynonym>
      <glossUsage>This is a colloquial term.</glossUsage>
    </glossAlt>
    <glossAlt>
      <glossAbbreviation>stick</glossAbbreviation>
      <glossStatus value="prohibited"/>
      <glossUsage>This is too colloquial.</glossUsage>
      <glossAlternateFor href="#usbfd/memoryStick"/>
    </glossAlt>
    <glossAlt>
      <glossAbbreviation>flash</glossAbbreviation>
      <glossStatus value="prohibited"/>
      <glossUsage>This short form is ambiguous.</glossUsage>
    </glossAlt>
  </glossBody>
</glossentry>
```

**4.2.3.1.2 <glossterm>**

The `<glossterm>` element specifies the preferred term that is associated with a definition of a sense. If the same term has multiple senses, create a separate `<glossentry>` topic for each sense.

---

**Comment by robander on 20 may 2021**

associated with a definition of a "sense"? I think we need to clear that up.

**Disposition: Unassigned**

---

**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<glossterm>` element is specialized from `<title>`. It is defined in the glossary entry module.
Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: ID and conref attributes (186), localization attributes (186), @base (186), @class (187), and @outputclass (189).

Example

See the example in <glossentry>. (64)

4.2.3.1.3 <glossdef>

The <glossdef> element specifies the definition of one sense of a term.

Usage information

If a term has multiple senses, create a separate <glossentry> topic to define each sense.

Specialization hierarchy

The <glossdef> element is specialized from <abstract>. It is defined in the glossary entry module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example

See the example in <glossentry>. (64)

4.2.3.1.4 <glossAbbreviation>

The <glossAbbreviation> element provides an abbreviated form of the term that is contained in a <glossterm> element.

Specialization hierarchy

The <glossAbbreviation> element is specialized from <title>. It is defined in the glossary entry module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: ID and conref attributes (186), localization attributes (186), @base (186), @class (187), and @outputclass (189).

Example

See the example in <glossentry>. (64)
4.2.3.1.5 <glossAcronym>

The `<glossAcronym>` element defines an acronym for the term that is defined in the `<glossterm>` element.

Usage information

This element can be used with the `<abbreviated-form>` element to display an expanded version of an acronym the first time that acronym appears in a set of text. See `<abbreviated-form>` (74) for information on how the two elements interact.

Note

Several issues arise when acronyms are translated into other languages. For example, an acronym in one language might not have an equivalent in another language. When acronyms are first displayed, some languages will display the expanded form first followed by the acronym in parenthesis, while other languages do the reverse. For some acronyms, a translation might need to render both the original and the translated version of the acronym. For all of these reasons, DITA allows an author or translator to control what is presented to a reader by using the `<glossSurfaceForm>` element, which will often accompany the `<glossAcronym>`. The `<abbreviated-form>` (74) topic contains information on how the `<glossSurfaceForm>` and `<glossAcronym>` elements affect references to the primary term.

Specialization hierarchy

The `<glossAcronym>` element is specialized from `<title>`. It is defined in the glossary entry module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: ID and conref attributes (186), localization attributes (186), @base (186), @class (187), and @outputclass (189).

Example

See the example in `<glossentry>` (64)

4.2.3.1.6 <glossAlt>

The `<glossAlt>` element contains a variant term for the preferred term that is defined in the `<glossterm>` element.

Usage information

The variant should have the same meaning as the term in the `<glossterm>` element; the variant is simply another way to refer to the same term. There might be many ways to refer to a term; each variant is placed in its own `<glossAlt>` element. The `<glossUsage>` element can be used within `<glossAlt>` to indicate when use of the alternate term is appropriate.

Note

A list of alternative terms is specific to the language, so the translation of a `<glossentry>` topic might result in empty elements within a `<glossAlt>` container.

Specialization hierarchy

The `<glossAlt>` element is specialized from `<section>`. It is defined in the glossary entry module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
See the example in <glossentry>. (64)

4.2.3.1.7 <glossAlternateFor>
The <glossAlternateFor> element indicates when a variant term has a relationship to another variant term in addition to the preferred term.

Comment by robander on 20 may 2021
Does it “indicate when a variant term has a relationship” or does it specify that there is a relationship with a specific other term?
Disposition: Unassigned

Usage information
The <glossAlternateFor> element is available inside the <glossAlt> element, which is a container that provides a variant for the primary <glossentry> term. In some cases, the variant might also be an alternate for another term. In the example below, the abbreviation “stick” is a variant of the primary term (USB flash drive). The <glossAlternateFor> element indicates that “stick” is also a variant of the synonym “memory stick”.

Comment by robander on 20 may 2021
There is a dependency here between the usage description and an example that is not actually given in this topic; that seems risky and we should probably move or reuse the example here.
Disposition: Unassigned

Specialization hierarchy
The <glossAlternateFor> element is specialized from <xref>. It is defined in the glossary entry module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), link-relationship attributes (191), and @keyref (196).

For this element, the @href attribute references a term for which the current variant is an alternate (in addition to the primary term of this <glossentry> topic). The reference will often be to another <glossAlt> element within the same <glossentry> topic, indicating that the current variant is an alternate for both the primary term and the referenced alternate term.

Example
See the example in <glossentry>. (64)
4.2.3.1.8 <glossBody>
The <glossBody> element is used to provide details about a glossary term, such as part of speech or additional forms of the term.

Specialization hierarchy
The <glossBody> element is specialized from <conbody>; it is defined in the glossary entry module. The <conbody> element is specialized from <body>; it is defined in the concept module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
See the example in <glossentry>. (64)

4.2.3.1.9 <glossPartOfSpeech>
The <glossPartOfSpeech> element identifies the part of speech for the preferred and alternate terms. Alternate terms must have the same part of speech as the preferred term, because all terms in the <glossentry> topic designate the same subject.

Usage information
If validation is required for parts of speech, use a subject scheme to set up controlled values for the @value attribute. Alternatively, processing rules can be used to validate the values. This avoids the need to hard code values in the XML grammar files, which would limit extension and would make values difficult to change for different languages.

Specialization hierarchy
The <glossPartOfSpeech> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the glossary entry module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

For this element, the @value attribute specifies the part of speech for the term or terms.

Example
See the example in <glossentry>. (64)

4.2.3.1.10 <glossProperty>
The <glossProperty> element specifies additional details about the preferred term or its subject, such as the gender of a noun.

Specialization hierarchy
The <glossProperty> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the glossary entry module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

```
<glossentry id="algorithm" xml:lang="es-es">
  <glossterm>El algoritmo</glossterm>
  <glossdef>Un algoritmo define un método de calcular un resultado.</glossdef>
  <glossBody>
    <glossPartOfSpeech value="noun"/>
    <glossProperty name="gender" value="masculine"/>
  </glossBody>
</glossentry>
```

4.2.3.11 <glossScopeNote>
The <glossScopeNote> element contains a clarification of the subject that is designated by the <glossterm>, such as examples of included or excluded companies or products. For instance, a scope note for "Linux" might explain that the term does not apply to UNIX products; it might give examples of Linux products that are included as well as UNIX products that are excluded.

Comment by robander on 20 may 2021
I think we really need to clarify "the subject that is designated by the glossterm"
Disposition: Unassigned

Specialization hierarchy
The <glossScopeNote> element is specialized from <note>. It is defined in the glossary entry module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and the attributes defined below.

@othertype
Specifies an alternate note type. This value is used as the user-provided note label when the @type attribute value is set to "other".

@type
Specifies the type of a note. This differs from the @type attribute on many other DITA elements. The following are the allowable values:

- "attention"
- "caution"
- "danger"
- "important"
- "note"
- "notice"
- "other"
- "remember"
- "restriction"
- "tip"
- "trouble"
Example

```xml
<glossentry id="linuxOS" xml:lang="en-us">
  <glossterm>Linux Operating System</glossterm>
  <glossdef>An operating system based on the kernel created by Linus Torvald.</glossdef>
  <glossBody>
    <glossPartOfSpeech value="noun"/>
    <glossScopeNote>Doesn't apply to UNIX products that bundle other kernels. Also, doesn't apply to the Linux Open Source Project that work on Linux distributions but, instead, only to the distributions themselves. Examples include RedHat, SuSE, and Ubuntu. </glossScopeNote>
  </glossBody>
</glossentry>
```

4.2.3.1.12 <glossShortForm>
The `<glossShortForm>` element provides a shorter alternative to the primary term that is specified in the `<glossterm>` element.

Usage information

**Note** Any list of alternative terms is specific to the language. Translation of a `<glossentry>` topic might result in an empty `<glossShortForm>` element if there is no equivalent short form in the target language.

Specialization hierarchy

The `<glossShortForm>` element is specialized from `<title>`. It is defined in the glossary entry module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: ID and conref attributes (186), localization attributes (186), `@base` (186), `@class` (187), and `@outputclass` (189).

Example

```xml
<glossentry id="www">
  <glossterm>World Wide Web</glossterm>
  <glossdef>A collection of documents available through the Internet.</glossdef>
  <glossBody>
    <glossPartOfSpeech value="noun"/>
    <glossAlt>
      <glossShortForm>the Web</glossShortForm>
    </glossAlt>
  </glossBody>
</glossentry>
```
4.2.3.13 <glossStatus>
The <glossStatus> element identifies the usage status of a preferred or alternate term. If the status is not specified, the <glossterm> provides a preferred term and an alternate term provides an allowed term.

Usage information
If validation is required for status values, use a subject scheme to set up controlled values for the @value attribute. Alternatively, processing rules can be used to validate the values.

Specialization hierarchy
The <glossStatus> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the glossary entry module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

For this element, the @value attribute specifies the usage status of the term or alternate term.

Example
See the example in <glossentry>. (64)

4.2.3.14 <glossSurfaceForm>
The <glossSurfaceForm> element specifies an unambiguous presentation of the <glossterm> that might combine multiple forms. The surface form is suitable to introduce the term in new contexts.

Usage information
The <glossSurfaceForm> element is most often used for terms that also specify the <glossAcronym> element. In that context, the <glossSurfaceForm> element contains the term in a manner that introduces both the term and the acronym, so that later references to the term can be replaced with the acronym alone. See the <abbreviated-form> (74) element for a full description of how the surface form is used together with acronyms.

Specialization hierarchy
The <glossSurfaceForm> element is specialized from <p>. It is defined in the glossary entry module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
The following topic defines the term "Anti-lock Braking System". Within the topic, the <glossSurfaceForm> element provides a version of the term that combines both the primary term and the acronym. This allows references to the topic from <abbreviated-form> to different versions of the term in different contexts.
4.2.3.1.15 <glossSymbol>

The <glossSymbol> element identifies a standard image that is associated with the subject of the <glossterm> element.

Specialization hierarchy

The <glossSymbol> element is specialized from <image>. It is defined in the glossary entry module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), @keyref (196), and the attributes defined below.

@href

Specifies the image. See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.

@scope

Specifies the relationship between the current document and the target resource. Allowable values are "local", "peer", "external", and -dita-use-conref-target (202). See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for more information on values.

@height

Specifies the vertical dimension for the resulting display. The value of this attribute is a real number expressed in decimal notation, optionally followed by a unit of measure. The following units of measurement are supported: cm, em, in, mm, pc, pt, and px (centimeters, ems, inches, millimeters, picas, points, and pixels, respectively). The default unit is px (pixels). Possible values include: "5", "5in", and "10.5cm".

@width

Specifies the horizontal dimension for the resulting display. The value of this attribute is a real number expressed in decimal notation, optionally followed by a unit of measure. The following units of measurement are supported: cm, em, in, mm, pc, pt, and px (centimeters, ems, inches, millimeters, picas, points, and pixels, respectively). The default unit is px (pixels). Possible values include: "5", "5in", and "10.5cm".

@align

Specifies the horizontal alignment of an image when placement is specified as "break". Common values include "left", "right", and "center".

@scale

Specifies a percentage as an unsigned integer by which to scale the image in the absence of any specified image height or width; a value of 100 implies that the image should be presented at its intrinsic size. If a value has been specified for the @height or @width attribute (or both), the @scale attribute is ignored.

It is an error if the value of this attribute is not an unsigned integer. In this case, the implementation might give an error message and might recover by ignoring this attribute.
@scalefit
Specifies whether an image is scaled up or down to fit within available space. Allowable values are "yes", "no", and -dita-use-conref-target (202). For a given image, if any one of @height, @width, or @scale is specified, those attributes determine the graphic size and any setting of @scalefit is ignored. If none of those attributes are specified and scalefit="yes", then the image is scaled by the same factor in both dimensions, so that the graphic will just fit within the available height or width (whichever is more constraining).

The available width would be the prevailing column (or table cell) width—that is, the width a paragraph of text would have if the graphic were a paragraph instead. The available height is implementation dependent, but if feasible, it is suggested to be the page (or table cell) height or some other reasonable value.

@placement
Specifies whether an image is displayed inline or on a separate line. The default value is "inline". Allowable values are: "inline", "break", and -dita-use-conref-target (202).

Example
<glossentry id="atlanticpuffin">
  <glossterm>Atlantic Puffin</glossterm>
  <glossdef>A sea bird that lives in the atlantic</glossdef>
  <glossBody>
    <glossSymbol href="puffinicon.jpg" scope="local">
      <alt>Atlantic puffin icon</alt>
    </glossSymbol>
  </glossBody>
</glossentry>

4.2.3.1.16 <glossSynonym>
The <glossSynonym> element provides a term that is a synonym of the primary value in the <glossterm> element.

Usage information
Note A list of synonyms is specific to the language, so translation of a <glossentry> topic might result in an empty <glossSynonym> element.

Specialization hierarchy
The <glossSynonym> element is specialized from <title>. It is defined in the glossary entry module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: ID and conref attributes (186), localization attributes (186), @base (186), @class (187), and @outputclass (189).

Example
See the example in <glossentry>.(64)
4.2.3.1.17 <glossUsage>

The <glossUsage> element provides information about the correct use of a term, such as where or how it can be used.

Specialization hierarchy

The <glossUsage> element is specialized from <note>. It is defined in the glossary entry module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and the attributes defined below.

@othertype

Specifies an alternate note type. This value is used as the user-provided note label when the @type attribute value is set to "other".

@type

Specifies the type of a note. This differs from the @type attribute on many other DITA elements. The following are the allowable values:

- "attention"
- "caution"
- "danger"
- "important"
- "note"
- "notice"
- "other"
- "remember"
- "restriction"
- "tip"
- "trouble"
- "warning"
- ":-dita-use-conref-target"

Example

See the example in <glossentry>. (64)

4.2.3.2 Glossary related elements

Elements related to the glossary specialization are not defined as part of the glossary topic type, but are often used in conjunction with those elements.

4.2.3.2.1 <abbreviated-form>

The <abbreviated-form> element represents a reference to a term that might appear in an abbreviated form (often an acronym).

Usage information

The long and short forms of the term are generally defined in a <glossentry> topic. Processors display the referenced term when rendering an <abbreviated-form> element.
The `<abbreviated-form>` element is intended to reference a `<glossentry>` topic that contains both a term and an abbreviated form of that term. The topic might also provide a surface form that differs from the original term. The full term or surface form is rendered in introductory contexts where the term might be unfamiliar to a reader or in other contexts where a precise term is appropriate. In other contexts a processor substitutes the abbreviated form of the term. Note that the definition of an introductory context will differ for every deliverable format.

For instance, a process composing a book deliverable might emit the surface form of a term on the first reference to the `<glossentry>` topic within the book or for every reference within a copyright or a warranty-related warning. A process generating an online page might emit the surface form as a hover tooltip on every instance of the term.

The following rules determine how to render an `<abbreviated-form>` element. As described, the definition of "introductory context" will vary based on the rendered format and processor.

1. If the referenced topic is not a `<glossentry>` topic (or a specialization of `<glossentry>`), the title of the topic **SHOULD** be displayed.
2. Otherwise, if `<abbreviated-form>` is located in an introductory context, and the referenced topic contains a non-empty `<glossSurfaceForm>` element, processors **SHOULD** render the contents of the `<glossSurfaceForm>` element from the referenced `<glossentry>` topic.
3. Otherwise, if `<abbreviated-form>` is located in an introductory context, processors **SHOULD** render the contents of the `<glossterm>` element from the referenced `<glossentry>` topic.
4. Otherwise (in non-introductory contexts), if the referenced `<glossentry>` topic contains a non-empty `<glossAcronym>` element, processors **SHOULD** render the abbreviated form of the term by displaying the contents of the `<glossAcronym>` element from the referenced `<glossentry>` topic.
5. Otherwise, processors **SHOULD** render the contents of the `<glossterm>` element from the referenced `<glossentry>` topic.

For instance, if an `<abbreviated-form>` element with the attribute `keyref="abs"` provided the first occurrence of the ABS term within a book, the sentence could be rendered as follows:

“The Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) will prevent the car from skidding in adverse weather conditions.”

If the ABS term had appeared previously within the book, the same sentence could instead be rendered as follows:
"The ABS will prevent the car from skidding in adverse weather conditions."

Processing expectations

Specialization hierarchy

The `<abbreviated-form>` element is specialized from `<term>`. It is defined in the abbreviated-form domain module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and `@keyref` (196).

Example

The term and acronym can be defined as follows, in a `<glossentry>` topic. Note that the `@id` attribute of the topic does not need to match the term or acronym.

```xml
<glossentry id="abs-definition">
  <glossterm>Anti-lock Braking System</glossterm>
  <glossBody>
    <glossSurfaceForm>Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)</glossSurfaceForm>
    <glossAlt>
      <glossAcronym>ABS</glossAcronym>
    </glossAlt>
  </glossBody>
</glossentry>
```

Note that there are three important elements for the purposes of rendering the `<abbreviated-form>` element.

- The `<glossSurfaceForm>` element defines the term as it should be displayed in an introductory context.
- The `<glossAcronym>` element defines the acronym associated with this term.
- The `<glossterm>` element provides a fallback version of the term, which will be displayed in situations where the preferred representation is unavailable.

The `<glossentry>` topic will be added to a map in the following manner. Again, the key (in this case "abs") does not need to match the term or acronym value.

```xml
<glossref keys="abs" href="antilock.dita"/>
```

An author who wants to reference this topic can do so by using the `<abbreviated-form>` element. The `@keyref` attribute references the value defined on the `@keys` attribute above.

```xml
<section>An <abbreviated-form keyref="abs"/> helps a driver to stop. For this reason many find an <abbreviated-form keyref="abs"/> useful.</section>
```

When rendered, the introductory usage of "abs" will display the surface form of the referenced term, while the later uses will display the acronym, as demonstrated here.

An Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) helps a driver to stop. For this reason many find an ABS useful.
4.2.3.2.2 <glossref>
The <glossref> element is a convenience element in maps for creating a reference to a glossary topic. It has a required @keys attribute, which forces the author to create a key by which inline terms can reference their definition. For example, when <glossentry> topics are used to define acronyms, this reminds authors to create a key which <abbreviated-form> elements can use to reference the short and expanded versions of that acronym.

Usage information
Note that the key value does not need to match the target term or acronym. In fact, using a more qualified value for the @keyref will reduce conflicts in situations where the same term or acronym might resolve in many ways. For example, an information set could use "cars.abs" as the key for the term Anti-lock Braking System, and "ship.abs" to refer to the term American Bureau of Shipping.

Specialization hierarchy
The <glossref> element is specialized from <topicref>. It is defined in the glossary reference domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), link-relationship attributes (191), @chunk (192), @collection-type (193), @keyref (196), @linking (196), @processing-role (198), @search (201), and @toc (201).

For this element:
• The @href attribute is a reference to a glossary definition, typically a <glossentry> topic.
• The @keys attribute is required.
• The @linking attribute has a default value of "none".
• The @toc attribute has a default value of "no".

Example

```xml
<map>
  <!-- ... -->
  <topicref href="car-maintenance.dita"/>
  <!-- ... -->
  <glossref keys="cars.abs" href="antiLockBrake.dita"/>
  <!-- ... key declarations for other referenced acronyms ... -->
</map>
```

4.2.3.2.3 <glossgroup>
The <glossgroup> is a specialized topic that can contain multiple <glossentry> topics within a single document.

Specialization hierarchy
The <glossgroup> element is specialized from <concept>; it is defined in the glossary group module. The <concept> element is specialized from <topic>; it is defined in the concept module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and architectural attributes (190).
For this element, the @id attribute is required.

Example

```xml
<glossgroup id="things" xml:lang="en">
  <title>Some terms</title>
  <glossentry id="bicycle">
    <glossterm>bicycle</glossterm>
    <glossdef>Human powered mode of transport with two wheels</glossdef>
  </glossentry>
  <glossentry id="fruitbat">
    <glossterm>Fruit bat</glossterm>
    <glossdef>A bat which likes fruit</glossdef>
  </glossentry>
</glossgroup>
```

4.2.4 Reference elements
Reference elements provide the fundamental structure for reference topics. Reference topics include specialized sections for programming language syntax and property lists, as well as standard elements such as sections, tables, and examples.

4.2.4.1 <propdesc>
The <propdesc> element contains the content of the third column in a properties table. This content describes the property type and its values.

Specialization hierarchy
The <propdesc> element is specialized from <stentry>. It is defined in the reference module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), table accessibility attributes (191), and the attributes defined below.

@rowspan
 Specifies the number of rows that a cell is to span inside a simple table.

Example
See <properties> (79).

4.2.4.2 <propdeschd>
The <propdeschd> element provides a label for the description column in a properties table.

Specialization hierarchy
The <propdeschd> element is specialized from <stentry>. It is defined in the reference module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and table accessibility attributes (191).

Example
See <properties> (79).

4.2.4.3 <properties>
A properties table describes the properties of something. Each property can include the type, value, and a description.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 26 October 2022
Can we be more specific than "something"? Perhaps "an object, category, or X". Thoughts?
Disposition: Unassigned

Usage information
A properties table typically is represented as a simple table with three columns. The first cell in a row lists the property type, the second cell in the row lists a value for the property, and the third cell in the row lists a description,

An optional header row can provide labels for the columns, if an author does not want to use the default labels that might be provided by stylesheets.

Specialization hierarchy
The <properties> element is specialized from <simpletable>. It is defined in the reference module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), display attributes (191), and simpletable attributes (191).

Examples
This section contains examples of how the <properties> element can be used.

Figure 7: Simple properties list
The following code sample shows a <properties> element that describes information about motor oil types:

```xml
<properties>
  <prophead>
    <proptypehd>Oil type</proptypehd>
    <propvaluehd>Oil brand</propvaluehd>
    <propdeschd>Appropriate use</propdeschd>
  </prophead>
  <property>
    <proptype>Primary oil</proptype>
    <propvalue>A1X</propvalue>
    <propdesc>One-cylinder engines</propdesc>
  </property>
  <property>
    <proptype>Secondary oil</proptype>
  </property>
</properties>
```
The properties list might be rendered as follows:

```
<properties>
  <prophead>
    <proptypehd>Visual element</proptypehd>
    <propvaluehd>Value</propvaluehd>
    <propdeschd>What it does</propdeschd>
  </prophead>
  <property>
    <proptype>Color</proptype>
    <propvalue>Red</propvalue>
    <propdesc>Indicates an error</propdesc>
  </property>
  <property>
    <propvalue>Green</propvalue>
    <propdesc>Indicates that conditions are good</propdesc>
  </property>
  <property>
    <propvalue>Yellow</propvalue>
    <propdesc>Indicates that a problem might exist</propdesc>
  </property>
  <property>
    <proptype>Shape</proptype>
    <propvalue>Circle, square, or triangle</propvalue>
    <propdesc>Use to add contrast and depth</propdesc>
  </property>
</properties>
```

The properties list might be rendered as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Visual element</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>What it does</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Color</td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Indicates an error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Green</td>
<td>Indicates that conditions are good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Yellow</td>
<td>Indicates that a problem might exist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shape</td>
<td>Circle, square, or triangle</td>
<td>Adds contrast and depth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**4.2.4.4 <property>**

The `<property>` element represents a single property in a properties list.

**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<property>` element is specialized from `<strow>`. It is defined in the reference module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
See <properties> (79).

4.2.4.5 <prophead>
The <prophead> element contains elements that provide labels for the columns in a properties table.

Rendering expectations
Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 26 October 2022
What are our expectations if a properties list does not contain a header row? Do we expect stylesheets might generate headings/labels? Do we expect that author-supplied headings always override those provided by stylesheets?
Disposition: Unassigned

Specialization hierarchy
The <prophead> element is specialized from <sthead>. It is defined in the reference module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
See <properties> (79).

4.2.4.6 <proptype>
The <proptype> element contains the content of the first cell in a properties table row. The content describes the type of the property.

Specialization hierarchy
The <proptype> element is specialized from <stentry>. It is defined in the reference module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), table accessibility attributes (191), and the attributes defined below.

@rowspan
Specifies the number of rows that a cell is to span inside a simple table.

Example
See <properties> (79).
4.2.4.7 <proptypehd>
The <proptypehd> element provides a label for the type column in a properties table.

Specialization hierarchy
The <proptypehd> element is specialized from <stentry>. It is defined in the reference module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and table accessibility attributes (191).

Example
See <properties> (79).

4.2.4.8 <propvalue>
The <propvalue> element contains the content of the second cell in a properties table row. This content indicates a value for the property type.

Usage information
Values can be placed in separate <property> elements if they need separate descriptions. The <proptype> element need not be repeated.

Comment by robander on 20 May 2021
This feels like something that should be called out for processors.

Kris Eberlein, 26 October 2022
We currently also call out the following nuance in the <properties> topic:
"When a single property type takes multiple values, authors can create additional property elements and use only the <propvalue> and <propdesc> elements for each successive value."

Disposition: Unassigned

Specialization hierarchy
The <propvalue> element is specialized from <stentry>. It is defined in the reference module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), table accessibility attributes (191), and the attributes defined below.

@rowspan
Specifies the number of rows that a cell is to span inside a simple table.

Example
See <properties> (79).
4.2.4.9 <propvaluehd>
The <propvaluehd> element provides a label for the value column in a properties table.

Specialization hierarchy
The <propvaluehd> element is specialized from <stentry>. It is defined in the reference module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and table accessibility attributes (191).

Example
See <properties> (79).

4.2.4.10 <refbody>
The <refbody> element contains the main content of a reference topic.

Specialization hierarchy
The <refbody> element is specialized from <body>. It is defined in the reference module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
See <reference> (84).

4.2.4.11 <refbodydiv>
The <refbodydiv> element provides a container for contiguous content in a reference topic. There is no additional semantic meaning.

Usage information
The <refbodydiv> element is useful primarily for reuse and as a specialization base.

Specialization hierarchy
The <refbodydiv> element is specialized from <bodydiv>. It is defined in the reference module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
The following code sample shows how a <refbodydiv> element can be used to group content for reuse

```xml
<reference id="sample-refbodydiv" xml:lang="en">
  <title>Sample for refbody</title>
  <shortdesc>This shows how refbodydiv might be used.</shortdesc>
</reference>
```
4.2.4.12 <reference>
The <reference> element is the top-level element for a reference topic. The reference topic includes special sections for programming syntax and property lists, as well as sections, tables, and examples.

Specialization hierarchy
The <reference> element is specialized from <topic>. It is defined in the reference module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and architectural attributes (190).
For this element, the @id attribute is required.

Example
The following code sample shows how a reference topic can be used:

```xml
<reference id="requiredTools">
  <title>Tools required to maintain Acme machinery</title>
  <refbody>
    <section>
      <title>Small tools</title>
      <ul>
        <li>Hard hat</li>
        <li>Hammer</li>
        <li>Nail</li>
        <li>Metal polish</li>
        <!-- ... -->
      </ul>
    </section>
    <section>
      <title>Expensive tools</title>
      <!-- ... -->
    </section>
  </refbody>
</reference>
```
4.2.4.13 <refsyn>
The <refsyn> element describes the syntax of something, for example, a command-line utility or an API signature.

Comment by Kris Eberlein on 26 October 2022
Can we be more specific than "something"?
Disposition: Unassigned

Specialization hierarchy
The <refsyn> element is specialized from <section>. It is defined in the reference module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
The following code sample shows how the <refsyn> element can be used to document the syntax for the Windows mkdir command:

```xml
<refsyn>
  <title>Syntax</title>
  <codeblock>mkdir <varname>drive</varname> <varname>directory</varname></codeblock>
  <parml>
    <plentry>
      <pt><varname>drive</varname></pt>
      <pd>Specifies the drive on which the new directory is created. This is an optional parameter.</pd>
    </plentry>
    <plentry>
      <pt><varname>path</varname></pt>
      <pd>Specifies the fully-qualified name of the new directory. This is a required parameter.</pd>
    </plentry>
  </parml>
</refsyn>
```

4.2.5 Task elements
Task elements provide the fundamental structure for task topics. The task topic includes sections for describing the context, prerequisites, actual steps, expected results, troubleshooting, example, and expected next steps for a task.

4.2.5.1 <chdesc>
The <chdesc> element provides the content of the second cell in a choice table row. This content describes the option that people can take to complete the step, and it explains the result of the choice, if it is not immediately obvious.

Specialization hierarchy
The <chdesc> element is specialized from <stentry>. It is defined in the task module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and table accessibility attributes (191).

Example
See <choicetable> (88).

4.2.5.2 <chdeschd>
The <chdeschd> element provides a label for the second column in a choice table.

Specialization hierarchy
The <chdeschd> element is specialized from <stentry>. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and table accessibility attributes (191).

Example
See <choicetable> (88).

4.2.5.3 <chhead>
The <chhead> element contains elements that provide labels for the columns in a choice table.

Rendering expectations
Labels provided by the <chhead> element override any default headings for the <choicetable> that might be provided by stylesheets.

Specialization hierarchy
The <chhead> element is specialized from <sthead>. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
See <choicetable> (88).

4.2.5.4 <choice>
A <choice> element describes a way to complete the current step.

Specialization hierarchy
The <choice> element is specialized from <li>. It is defined in the task module.
**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

**Example**
See `<choices>` (87)

**4.2.5.5 `<choices>`**
The `<choices>` element contains a list of choices. Each choice represents a way to complete the current step.

**Usage information**
The `<choices>` element provides information when there is more than one way to complete a step. It is a list.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The `<choices>` element is specialized from `<ul>`. It is defined in the task module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

**Example**
The following code sample shows how the `<choices>` element can be used when different operating systems have different keyboard shortcuts. In this scenario, flagging is used to render labels for the different operating systems.

```xml
<step>
  <cmd>To edit the attributes, select the element and press the applicable keyboard shortcut for your operating system:</cmd>
  <choices>
    <choice platform="mac-os" uicontrol="option + return"></choice>
    <choice platform="windows" uicontrol="Alt + Enter"></choice>
  </choices>
  <stepresult>The `<wintitle>`Attributes`</wintitle> view is displayed.</stepresult>
</step>
```

The rendered output might look like the following:

5. To edit the attributes, select the element and press the applicable keyboard shortcut for your operating system:
   - [Mac OS] option + return
   - [Windows] Alt + Enter
4.2.5.6 <choicetable>

A choice table provides information about a set of options for completing a step.

Usage information

A choice table provides information when there is more than one way to complete a step. It is a simple table with two columns. The first cell in a row labels the option, and the second cell in the row describes the option that a user can take to complete the step.

An optional header row can provide labels for the columns, if an author does not want to use the default labels that might be provided by stylesheets.

Rendering expectations

If choice table does not contain a header row, processors typically auto-generate labels for the columns in the choice table. The text for the labels is specified in stylesheets.

Specialization hierarchy

The <choicetable> element is specialized from <simpletable>. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), display attributes (191), and <simpletable> attributes (191).

For this element, the @keycol attribute has a default value of "1".

Examples

This section contains examples of how the <choicetable> element can be used.

Figure 9: Simple choice table

The following code sample contains a <choicetable> element that is used to explain the options that a user can take to cancel a job:

```xml
<step>
  <cmd>Select the option that you want:</cmd>
  <choicetable relcolwidth="1* 2*">
    <chrow>
      <choption>Cancel job</choption>
      <chdesc>The application attempts to cancel the job gracefully. The job might not be completely canceled, although the job status is "Canceled".</chdesc>
    </chrow>
    <chrow>
      <choption>Force the job to cancel</choption>
      <chdesc>The application will force the job to be canceled. This might result in a mismatch between the state file and the actual resource state.</chdesc>
    </chrow>
  </choicetable>
</step>
```

The choice table might be rendered in the following way. Note that the labels for the columns are contributed by the stylesheets that are used by the processor.
Table 1: Choice Table with a Header Row

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cancel the job</td>
<td>The application attempts to cancel the job gracefully. The job might not be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>completely canceled, although the job status is &quot;Canceled&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Force the job to cancel</td>
<td>The application will force the job to be canceled. This might result in a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mismatch between the state file and the actual resource state.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 10: Choice Table with a Header Row**

The following code sample contains a `<choicetable>` element that contains a header row. The choice table is used to provide users with instructions for creating a filter using either the command line or the graphical user interface. The header row is used to specify column labels of "Option" and "Action".

```xml
<step>
  <cmd>Create a new filter:</cmd>
  <choicetable>
    <chhead>
      <choptionhd>Option</choptionhd>
      <chdeschd>Action</chdeschd>
    </chhead>
    <chrow>
      <choption>Command-line interface</choption>
      <chdesc>Type <codeph>arg -f filter</codeph></chdesc>
    </chrow>
    <chrow>
      <choption>Product GUI</choption>
      <chdesc>Click <uicontrol>New Filter</uicontrol></chdesc>
    </chrow>
  </choicetable>
</step>
```

The choice table might be rendered in the following way:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Command-line interface</td>
<td>Type <code>arg -f filter</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product GUI</td>
<td>Click New Filter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**4.2.5.7 <choption>**

The `<choption>` element contains the content of the first cell in a choice table row. This content labels the option that people can take to complete the step.

**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<choption>` element is specialized from `<stentry>`. It is defined in the task module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and table accessibility attributes (191).

Example
See <choicetable> (88).

4.2.5.8 <choptionhd>
The <choptionhd> element provides a label for the first column in a choice table.

Specialization hierarchy
The <choptionhd> element is specialized from <stentry>. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and table accessibility attributes (191).

Example
See <choicetable> (88).

4.2.5.9 <chrow>
The <chrow> element represents a row in a choice table. It contains a pair of elements: <choption> and <chdesc>.

Specialization hierarchy
The <chrow> element is specialized from <strow>. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
See <choicetable> (88).

4.2.5.10 <cmd>
A command specifies the action that people take to complete a step.

Specialization hierarchy
The <cmd> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).
Example
In the following code sample, the `<cmd>` element provides clear, active-voice instruction for how to complete a step:

```xml
<step>
  <cmd>Specify the configuration parameters.</cmd>
</step>
```

4.2.5.11 `<context>`
Contextual information is background information that helps people understand the purpose of the task and what they will gain by completing it.

Rendering expectations
Implementations might want to consider having their stylesheets render a label for this element.

Specialization hierarchy
The `<context>` element is specialized from `<section>`. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
An author uses the following markup to provide users with more contextual information than is appropriate for a short description. Style sheets might generate a label, for example, “About this procedure”, to indicate clearly that the information provided is background information.

```xml
<task id="Generating-stub-files" xml:lang="en-us">
  <title>Generating stub files</title>
  <shortdesc>You can use Task Modeler to generate stub files. Stub files are DITA files that contain only a title.</shortdesc>
  <taskbody>
    <context>As you perform this procedure, you can select the conventions that you want to use for file names.</context>
  </taskbody>
</task>
```

4.2.5.12 `<info>`
The `<info>` element contains additional information about the step.

Specialization hierarchy
The `<info>` element is specialized from `<div>`. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).
Example
In the following code sample, the `<info>` element provides additional information about the ways that the step can be performed:

```xml
<step>
  <cmd>Specify the configuration parameters.</cmd>
  <info>You can use either the command line or the product GUI.</info>
</step>
```

4.2.5.13 `<postreq>`
Post-requisites are steps or tasks that people might need to perform after completing the current task.

Rendering expectations
Implementations might want to consider having their stylesheets render a label for this element.

Specialization hierarchy
The `<postreq>` element is specialized from `<section>`. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
The following code sample shows how a user might be directed to notify a test proctor after completing a test.

```xml
<steps>
  <!-- ... -->
  <step>
    <cmd>Click <uicontrol>Done</uicontrol> to complete the test.</cmd>
  </step>
</steps>
<postreq>Notify the proctor upon completing this self-test.</postreq>
```

4.2.5.14 `<prereq>`
Prerequisites are things that people need to know or preliminary tasks that people need to perform before starting the current task.

Rendering expectations
Implementations might want to consider having their stylesheets render a label for this element.

Specialization hierarchy
The `<prereq>` element is specialized from `<section>`. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).
Example
The following code sample is from a topic that explains how to create an SQLJ file. A prerequisite is to log into the SQLJ server.

```xml
<task id="sqlj">
  <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
  <taskbody>
    <prereq>
      Before creating a new SQLJ file, you must log in to the SQLJ server.
    </prereq>
  </taskbody>
</task>
```

Style sheets might generate a label, for example, “Before you begin”, to indicate clearly that the prerequisite task needs to be performed before embarking on the procedure.

4.2.5.15 <result>
The <result> element describes the expected outcome for the task as a whole.

Rendering expectations
Implementations might want to consider having their stylesheets render a label for this element.

Specialization hierarchy
The <result> element is specialized from <section>. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
In the following code sample, the author clearly communicates the expected result of successfully completing the task:

```xml
<task id="sqlj">
  <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
  <taskbody>
    <result>
      File Created window is displayed, and the SQLJ file is successfully created.
    </result>
  </taskbody>
</task>
```

4.2.5.16 <step>
A step is an action that people take to complete a task. It can also contain additional information about the step, such as an example, result, or troubleshooting guidance.

Rendering expectations
When the @importance attribute is specified on the <step> element, it indicates whether the step is optional or required. Implementations might want to consider having their stylesheets render a applicable label when @importance is specified on <step>,...
Specialization hierarchy

The `<step>` element is specialized from `<li>`. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

For this element, the `@importance` attribute is limited to the values "optional", "required", or `-dita-use-conref-target` (202).

Example

The following code sample shows many of the elements that the `<step>` element can contain:

```xml
<step>
  <cmd>SSpecify the configuration parameters.</cmd>
  <info>The configuration parameters can be specified from either the command line or the product GUI.</info>
  <choices>
    <choice>From a command prompt, type `config -l parameter`</choice>
    <choice>Click New Configuration Parameters</choice>
  </choices>
  <stepresult>You receive a 'Configuration successful' message.</stepresult>
  <steptroubleshooting>If you do not receive a 'Configuration successful message,' retry the configuration operation.</steptroubleshooting>
</step>
```

4.2.5.17 `<stepresult>`

The `<stepresult>` element provides information about the expected outcome of a step.

Specialization hierarchy

The `<stepresult>` element is specialized from `<div>`. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example

In the following example, the content of the `<stepresult>` element enables the user to ascertain whether they have completed the step correctly:

```xml
<step>
  <cmd>SSpecify the configuration parameters.</cmd>
  <info>You can use either the command line or the product GUI.</info>
  <choices>
    <choice>From a command prompt, type `config -l parameter`</choice>
    <choice>Click New Configuration Parameters</choice>
  </choices>
  <stepresult>You receive a 'Configuration successful' message.</stepresult>
</step>
```
### 4.2.5.18 <steps>
Steps are a series of actions that people perform in a specific order and manner.

#### Rendering expectations
Steps that contain only a single step should be rendered as a paragraph. Steps that contain two or more steps should be rendered as an ordered list.

Implementations might want to consider having their stylesheets render a label for this element.

#### Specialization hierarchy
The `<steps>` element is specialized from `<ol>`. It is defined in the task module.

#### Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

#### Example
The following code sample shows a simple task topic with two steps:

```xml
<task id="sqlj">
  <title>Creating an SQLJ file</title>
  <taskbody>
    <context>Once you have set up SQLJ, you can create a new SQLJ file.</context>
    <steps>
      <step>
        <cmd>In a text editor, create a new file.</cmd>
      </step>
      <step>
        <cmd>Enter the first query statement.</cmd>
      </step>
    </steps>
  </taskbody>
</task>
```

### 4.2.5.19 <steps-informal>
Informal steps are steps that do not follow a strict content model. A paragraph might describe more than one step, or a paragraph might combine procedural information along with other information.

#### Rendering expectations
Implementations might want to consider having their stylesheets render a label for this element.

#### Specialization hierarchy
The `<steps-informal>` element is specialized from `<section>`. It is defined in the task module.

#### Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).
Example

The following code sample shows how an author provided informal information about how to grow a flower from seed:

```xml
<task id="growing-flower">
  <title>Growing a flower from seed</title>
  <taskbody>
    <steps-informal>
      <p>Put the soil in the container any old way. It doesn't really matter how you do it as long as it is at least 12 cm deep. Once the soil is in place, plant the seeds, water appropriately and wait.</p>
    </steps-informal>
  </taskbody>
</task>
```

4.2.5.20 <stepsection>

The `<stepsection>` element contains expository text that might be rendered before a step.

Usage information

The `<stepsection>` element can be used to break up lengthy procedures by providing labels for groups of steps. Note that introducing `<stepsection>` elements will not affect the contiguous numbering of the steps.

Rendering expectations

Processors which render the content of `<stepsection>` elements among the `<step>` elements MUST NOT number the `<stepsection>` elements.

Specialization hierarchy

The `<stepsection>` element is specialized from `<li>`. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example

The following code sample shows how `<stepsection>` element can be used to group steps in a high-level overview topic that links to other topics:

```xml
<steps>
  <stepsection>Install and configure the application:</stepsection>
  <step>
    <cmd><xref keyref="download">Download the application</xref>.</cmd>
  </step>
  <step>
    <cmd><xref keyref="install">Install the application</xref>.</cmd>
  </step>
  <step>
    <cmd><xref keyref="configure">Configure the application</xref></cmd>
  </step>
  <stepsection>Set up the development environment:</stepsection>
  <step>
    <cmd><xref keyref="prep">Prepare the environment</xref>.</cmd>
  </step>
  <!-- ... -->
  <stepsection>Start the tutorial:</stepsection>
</steps>
```
This topic might be rendered in the following way. Note that the numbering of the steps is not affected by the introduction of the <stepsection> elements.

Install and configure the application:
1. Download the application.
2. Install the application.
3. Configure the application.

Set up the development environment:
4. Prepare the environment.
...

Start the tutorial
8. Exercise: Create a plug-in.
...

4.2.5.21 <steptroubleshooting>
Step troubleshooting is information that is intended to help people respond to the situation if a step does not complete as expected.

Specialization hierarchy
The <steptroubleshooting> element is specialized from <div>. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
The following code sample shows how the <steptroubleshooting> element specifies the troubleshooting actions that a user can take if the step does not complete as they expected:

```
<step>
  <cmd>Log in to the system</cmd>
  <stepresult>
    <p>The <wintitle>Welcome</wintitle> screen appears.</p>
  </stepresult>
  <steptroubleshooting>
    <p>If the <wintitle>Welcome</wintitle> screen does not appear, try one or more of the following actions:</p>
    <ul>
      <li>Verify that the user name was entered correctly</li>
      <li>Verify that the password was entered correctly</li>
      <li>Confirm that the maintenance contract is still active</li>
    </ul>
  </steptroubleshooting>
</step>
```
4.2.5.22 <steps-unordered>
Unordered steps are steps in which the order of the steps to be performed might vary from one situation to another.

**Rendering expectations**
Implementations might want to consider having their stylesheets render a label for this element.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The `<steps-unordered>` element is specialized from `<ul>`. It is defined in the task module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

**Example**
The following code sample shows how an author provided information about the tasks that need to be performed before leaving on a vacation. While each step involves a single item, the steps can be performed in any order.

```xml
<task id="prep-for-trip">
  <title>Preparing for a trip</title>
  <taskbody>
    <steps-unordered>
      <step>
        <cmd>Arrange for a pet sitter</cmd>
      </step>
      <step>
        <cmd>Do laundry</cmd>
      </step>
      <step>
        <cmd>Buy a plane ticket</cmd>
      </step>
    </steps-unordered>
  </taskbody>
</task>
```

4.2.5.23 <stepxmp>
A step example illustrates how a step is completed. The example might be text-based, an image, a code sample, a link to a video, or some other representation.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The `<stepxmp>` element is specialized from `<div>`. It is defined in the task module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

**Example**
The following code sample shows how the `<stepxmp>` can provide an example of how a user can perform a step:

```xml
<step>
  <cmd>Add an XML comment in the map that explains why you applied the
```
4.2.5.24 <task>
The <task> element is the top-level element for a task topic. Task topics provide the instructions that guide people to perform a task.

Usage information
The OASIS DITA Technical Committee distributes two document-type shells for task topics: general task and strict task.

General task
Has a more relaxed content model. It allows <section> and <steps-informal> inside of the task body; it also allows multiple instances and varying order for the elements that make up the task body.

(Strict) task
Maintains a strict order and cardinality for elements within the <taskbody> content model. The strict task is implemented with a constraint module.

Specialization hierarchy
The <task> element is specialized from <topic>. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and architectural attributes (190).

For this element, the @id attribute is required.

Example
The following code sample shows that <task> is the topic-level element for a task topic:

```xml
<task id="learn-dita">
  <title>Learning DITA</title>
  <!-- ... -->
</task>
```

4.2.5.25 <taskbody>
The <taskbody> element contains the body of a task topic. The task body can include prerequisites, contextual information, steps, results, examples, troubleshooting information, and post-requisites. General task topics can also contain generic sections.

Usage information
The content model for the task topic varies depending on whether the strict task or general task document-type shell is used.
Specialization hierarchy

The `<taskbody>` element is specialized from `<body>`. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Examples

This section contains examples of the `<taskbody>` element in both (strict) task and general task topics.

Figure 11: Strict task topic

The following code sample shows how the `<taskbody>` element contains the main building blocks of a strict task topic:

```xml
<task id="Generating-stub-files" xml:lang="en-us">
  <title>Generating stub files</title>
  <shortdesc>You can use Task Modeler to generate stub files. Stub files are DITA files that contain only a title.</shortdesc>
  <taskbody>
    <prereq>You must have created a DITA map in Task Modeler.</prereq>
    <context>As you perform this procedure, you can select the conventions that you want to use for file names.</context>
    <steps>
      <!-- ... -->
    </steps>
    <result>In the File Manager view, you can see the file names and paths of the DITA topics.</result>
    <tasktroubleshooting>If you cannot see the file name and paths of the DITA topics, refresh the view.</tasktroubleshooting>
    <example> <! -- ... --> </example>
    <postreq>You now can create a relationship table to define links between the topics in your DITA map.</postreq>
  </taskbody>
</task>
```

In a strict task topic, while the child elements of `<taskbody>` are all optional, they can only occur once and must appear in a specific order.

Figure 12: General task topic

The following code sample shows ...
4.2.5.26 <tasktroubleshooting>
Task troubleshooting information is information that is intended to help people respond to the situation if a task does not complete as expected.

Usage information
In particular, the <tasktroubleshooting> element can be used to explain how users can recover when the results of a task do not match those listed in the <result> element. The troubleshooting remedy typically contains one or more actions for solving a problem. For complex remedies, link to another task.

Rendering expectations
Implementations might want to consider having their stylesheets render a label for this element.

Specialization hierarchy
The <tasktroubleshooting> element is specialized from <section>. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
In the following code sample, the <tasktroubleshooting> element contains brief information that explains the steps that the user can take when the results of a task are not as expected. For a complex remedy, the author could provide a link to another task topic.

```xml
<task id="add-new-categories">
  <title>Adding new user categories</title>
  <taskbody>
    <steps>
      <!-- ... -->
    </steps>
    <result>
      <p>The User Type menu displays the new types you added.</p>
    </result>
    <tasktroubleshooting>
      <p>If the User Type menu does not display the additions, try one or more of the following:
      <ul>
        <li>Refresh the page</li>
        <li>Verify that Add Types window is not still open; if so, go to it and press <uicontrol>OK</uicontrol>.</li>
      </ul>
    </tasktroubleshooting>
  </taskbody>
</task>
```
4.2.5.27 <tutorialinfo>
The <tutorialinfo> element contains additional information that is useful when the task topic is part of a tutorial.

Specialization hierarchy
The <tutorialinfo> element is specialized from <div>. It is defined in the task module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
The following code sample shows how the <tutorialinfo> element might be used in a task topic that is part of a tutorial.

```xml
<steps>
  <step>
    <cmd>Do this</cmd>
    <tutorialinfo>In your editor, open the first element and click on the dialog.</tutorialinfo>
  </step>
  <step>
    <cmd>Do that</cmd>
    <tutorialinfo>Move the framulator into the foobar box.</tutorialinfo>
  </step>
</steps>
```

4.2.6 Troubleshooting elements
Troubleshooting topics document corrective action such as troubleshooting or alarm clearing.

4.2.6.1 <cause>
The <cause> element describes a potential source of the problem that is described in the troubleshooting topic.

Usage information
This information should be brief; if it is not possible to make the information brief, this might be a sign that a full troubleshooting topic is needed.

Specialization hierarchy
The <cause> element is specialized from <section>. It is defined in the troubleshooting module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
See 4.2.6.9 troubleshooting (108).
4.2.6.2 <condition>
The <condition> element describes a state that the troubleshooting topic is intended to remedy. This information helps the user decide whether a troubleshooting topic might contain an applicable remedy for a problem.

Usage information
This section should add to or clarify information that is in the title or short description of the troubleshooting topic.

Specialization hierarchy
The <condition> element is specialized from <section>. It is defined in the troubleshooting module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
See 4.2.6.9 troubleshooting (108).

4.2.6.3 <diagnostics>
The <diagnostics> element is a container element for diagnostic elements that help users determine which of several possible causes discussed within the troubleshooting topic applies to the symptoms they are experiencing. Diagnostics may be provided in text or table format within <diagnostics-general> or in step-by-step format within <diagnostics-steps>.

Comment by robander on 21 may 2021
Feels like the first sentence here could be simplified. Also would be nice to delete the word "users".
Disposition: Unassigned

Usage information
Use when a troubleshooting topic contains more than one possible cause for the condition.

Specialization hierarchy
The <diagnostics> element is specialized from <bodydiv>. It is defined in the troubleshooting module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
See 4.2.6.4 diagnostics-general (104) and 4.2.6.5 diagnostics-steps (106).
4.2.6.4 <diagnostics-general>

The <diagnostics-general> element includes non-procedural information that can help determine which of multiple cause-remedy pairs apply to a specific situation. Results of the diagnostics might link to the specific cause-remedy section that applies to each result.

Usage information

Use this element when presenting non-procedural diagnostic information; for example, when including a diagnostic table or a flowchart. Often in these cases, the symptoms are observable without users having to take a specific action – they can simply observe that the symptom exists; for example, if a particular light is on or off.

Specialization hierarchy

The <diagnostics-general> element is specialized from <section>. It is defined in the troubleshooting module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example

The following code sample shows how a troubleshooting topic would provide a diagnostic table to help a user determine which cause and therefore which solution applies to them.

```xml
<troubleshooting>
  <title>Car is making funny noises.</title>
  <shortdesc/>
  <prolog/>
  <troublebody>
    <condition>
      <p>You probably know how your vehicle sounds when it’s running properly. Listening to your car can help you troubleshoot problems. If you hear a strange sound, pay attention and react accordingly.</p>
    </condition>
    <diagnostics>
      <diagnostics-general>
        <table frame="all">
          <colspec colname="c1" colnum="1" colwidth="1*"/>
          <colspec colname="c2" colnum="2" colwidth="1*"/>
          <thead>
            <row>
              <entry>Symptom</entry>
              <entry>Probable Cause</entry>
            </row>
          </thead>
          <tbody>
            <row>
              <entry>Clunking noise on bumps only</entry>
              <entry><xref href="#./checkstruts"/></entry>
            </row>
            <row>
              <entry>Continuous clunking noise</entry>
              <entry><xref href="#./checkballjoints"/></entry>
            </row>
            <row>
              <entry>Ticks when in neutral</entry>
              <entry><xref href="#./checkexhaust"/></entry>
            </row>
          </tbody>
        </table>
      </diagnostics-general>
    </diagnostics>
  </troublebody>
</troubleshooting>
```
Ticks only in reverse
Ticks in turns and curves
Only ticks when cold
Ticks only at slow speed
4.2.6.5 <diagnostics-steps>
The <diagnostics-steps> element includes step-by-step information that can help determine which of multiple cause-remedy pairs apply to a specific situation. Results of each diagnostic step might link to the specific cause-remedy section that applies to each result.

Usage information
Use this element in situations where causes are not simply observable, but require the user to perform a series of steps to determine the cause of the problem, for example, set breakpoints, send commands, push buttons, and so on.

Specialization hierarchy
The <diagnostics-steps> element is specialized from <section>. It is defined in the troubleshooting module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
The following code sample shows how a troubleshooting topic would provide step-by-step instructions to help a user determine which cause and therefore which solution applies to them.

```xml
<xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<script type="text/x-dita-2.0-technical-content-specification">
<title>
<shortdesc>
<prolog/>
<troublebody>
<condition>
<diagnostics>
<diagnostics-steps>
<steps>
<step>
<cmd>Open the command prompt and type <userinput>ipconfig</userinput>.</cmd>
<info>
The Default Gateway (listed last) is your router’s IP. Your computer’s IP address is the number next to “IP Address.” If your computer’s IP address starts with 169, the computer is not receiving a valid IP address. See <xref href="#./ipaddress"></p>
</info>
</step>
</steps>
</diagnostics>
</diagnostics-steps>
</condition>
</troublebody>
</shortdesc>
</title>
</troubleshooting>
</script>
```
If your address does not start with 169, type `tracert 8.8.8.8` to view each step between your router and the Google DNS servers.

If the error comes up early along the pathway, see `resetnetwork`.

If everything is working with Google, use the command `nslookup` to determine if there's a problem with the server you are trying to connect to.

If you received results such as `Timed Out`, `Server Failure`, `Refused`, `No Response from Server`, or `Network is Unreachable`, the problem originates in the DNS server for your destination.

If the previous steps turn up no problems, contact your ISP to see if they're having issues.

### 4.2.6.6 <remedy>

The `<remedy>` element contains steps that are a potential solution for the problem described in the troubleshooting topic.

#### Usage information

Typically, a `<remedy>` is preceded by a `<cause>`.

#### Specialization hierarchy

The `<remedy>` element is specialized from `<section>`. It is defined in the troubleshooting module.

#### Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

#### Example

See 4.2.6.9 troubleshooting (108).
4.2.6.7 <responsibleParty>
The <responsibleParty> element identifies the individual or team whose task it is to perform a remedy procedure.

Specialization hierarchy
The <responsibleParty> element is specialized from <p>. It is defined in the troubleshooting module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
See 4.2.6.9 troubleshooting (108).

4.2.6.8 <troublebody>
The <troublebody> element contains the main content of the troubleshooting topic.

Usage Information
Troubleshooting topics limit the body structure to a single optional condition followed by one or more solutions.

Specialization hierarchy
The <troublebody> element is specialized from <body>. It is defined in the troubleshooting module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
See 4.2.6.9 troubleshooting (108).

4.2.6.9 <troubleshooting>
The <troubleshooting> element is the top-level element for a troubleshooting topic.

Comment by robander on 21 May 2021
Should make this consistent with other topic specialization elements, which state that they are topics and list the purpose, rather than simply describing them as a top-level element.

Disposition: Unassigned

Usage information
Troubleshooting topics begin with a description of a condition that the reader might want to correct, followed by one or more cause-remedy pairs. Each cause-remedy pair is a potential solution to the trouble described in the condition. Troubleshooting topics represent the kind of information that users typically consult to fix a problem.
Specialization hierarchy

The `<troubleshooting>` element is specialized from `<topic>`. It is defined in the troubleshooting module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and architectural attributes (190).

For this element, the `@id` attribute is required.

Example

```xml
<troubleshooting id="resolve" xml:lang="en-us">
  <title>E247 - Memory fault has occurred</title>
  <shortdesc>The system has detected a problem in memory.</shortdesc>
  <troublebody>
    <condition>
      <p>The fault indicator flashes on the front panel, and the error log contains the following message:
      <msgph>E247 - Memory fault has occurred</msgph></p>
    </condition>
    <troubleSolution>
      <cause>
        <p>The fault indicator flashes on the front panel, and the error log contains the following message:
        <msgph>E247 - Memory fault has occurred</msgph></p>
      </cause>
      <remedy>
        < responsibleParty>System administrator</ responsibleParty>
        <steps>
          <step>
            <cmd>Reset the alarm</cmd>
          </step>
          <step>
            <cmd>Monitor the system periodically to see whether the alarm recurs</cmd>
          </step>
        </steps>
        <remedy>
          < responsibleParty>Maintenance technician</ responsibleParty>
          <steps conref="BoardReseat.dita#BoardReseatg/steps">
            <step><cmd/></step>
          </steps>
          <remedy>
            < responsibleParty>Maintenance technician</ responsibleParty>
            <steps conref="BoardReplace.dita#BoardReplac/steps">
              <step><cmd/></step>
            </steps>
          </remedy>
        </remedy>
      </troubleSolution>
      <troubleSolution>
        <cause>
          <p>Recurring memory fault indicates possible problem with the system memory board. Reseating the board may fix the problem.</p>
        </cause>
        <remedy>
          < responsibleParty>Maintenance technician</ responsibleParty>
          <steps conref="BoardReseat.dita#BoardReseatg/steps">
            <step><cmd/></step>
          </steps>
          <remedy>
            < responsibleParty>Maintenance technician</ responsibleParty>
            <steps conref="BoardReplace.dita#BoardReplac/steps">
              <step><cmd/></step>
            </steps>
          </remedy>
        </remedy>
      </troubleSolution>
      <troubleSolution>
        <cause>
          <p>Reseating the system memory board did not fix the problem. Replacing the board may fix the problem.</p>
        </cause>
        <remedy>
          < responsibleParty>Maintenance technician</ responsibleParty>
          <steps conref="BoardReplace.dita#BoardReplac/steps">
            <step><cmd/></step>
          </steps>
        </remedy>
      </troubleSolution>
    </troublebody>
</troubleshooting>
```
4.2.6.10 <troubleSolution>
The <troubleSolution> element contains a possible cause and remedy for the problem described in a troubleshooting topic.

Usage information
The cause might be omitted if it is implicit or if the remedy is not associated with a cause. The remedy might be omitted if there is no known remedy for the cause.

Specialization hierarchy
The <troubleSolution> element is specialized from <bodydiv>. It is defined in the troubleshooting module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
See 4.2.6.9 troubleshooting (108).

4.3 Domain specializations
Domains in this section include those generally associated with technical content, such as the programming and software domains.

4.3.1 Equation domain
The elements in the equation domain enable authors to clearly distinguish equations from other type of content. These markup distinctions can enable formatting distinctions, numbering of equations, and more. This domain can be used independently of the MathML domain.

The equation domain elements do not attempt to satisfy all possible requirements for representing equations semantically. More sophisticated users of equations might need to further specialize from these elements or provide an alternative vocabulary for semantic equations.

4.3.1.1 <equation-block>
The <equation-block> element represents an equation that is presented as a separate block within a text flow.

Usage information
When an <equation-block> element has multiple direct child elements, each child represents an alternative form of the equation.

Rendering expectations
Block equations can be numbered.

Processing expectations
Processors are free to choose the form or forms that they render. For example, if there is both an image and MathML markup, an HTML-generating processor could generate both the image reference and the
MathML with appropriate HTML @class or @id values to enable dynamic rendering based on browser capability.

**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<equation-block>` element is specialized from `<div>`. It is defined in the equation domain module.

**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

**Example**

In the following example, a block equation uses MathML as its content:

```xml
<p>A block equation using MathML:</p>
<equation-block>
  <mathml>
    <m:math>
      <m:semantics>
        <m:mrow>
          <m:msqrt>
            <m:mrow>
              <m:msup><m:mi>a</m:mi><m:mn>2</m:mn></m:msup>
              <m:mo>+</m:mo>
              <m:msup><m:mi>b</m:mi><m:mn>2</m:mn></m:msup>
            </m:mrow>
          </m:msqrt>
        </m:mrow>
      </m:semantics>
    </m:math>
  </mathml>
</equation-block>
```

In the following example, a block equation uses an image as its content:

```xml
<p>A block equation using an image:</p>
<equation-block>
  <image keyref="equation-image-01">
    <alt>a squared plus b squared.</alt>
  </image>
</equation-block>
```

In the following example, the block equation contains two alternative forms of the same equation:

```xml
<equation-block>
  <image keyref="equation-image-01">
    <alt>a squared plus b squared.\</alt>
  </image>
  <mathml>
    <m:math>
      <m:semantics>
        <m:mrow>
          <m:msqrt>
            <m:mrow>
              <m:msup><m:mi>a</m:mi><m:mn>2</m:mn></m:msup>
              <m:mo>+</m:mo>
              <m:msup><m:mi>b</m:mi><m:mn>2</m:mn></m:msup>
            </m:mrow>
          </m:msqrt>
        </m:mrow>
      </m:semantics>
    </m:math>
  </mathml>
</equation-block>
```
4.3.1.2 <equation-figure>
The <equation-figure> element represents an equation that functions as a form of figure or display.

Usage information
Display equations can have titles, descriptions, figure groups, and all other figure components. The direct children of <equation-figure> can be the equation content itself (for example, <mathml> or an image reference), or it can be one or more <equation-block> elements, along with other elements allowed within figures.

When an <equation-figure> element has multiple direct child <mathml>,<image>, or <pre> elements, each child represents an alternative form of the equation.

When the intent is to have equations combined with other commentary within an <equation-figure>, the recommended best practice is to use child <equation-block> elements to contain the equations and clearly distinguish them from the commentary.

Rendering expectations
Display equations are intended to be numbered when numbering is desired.

Processing expectations
Processors are free to choose the form or forms that they use in deliverables. For example, if there is both an image and MathML markup, an HTML-generating processor could generate both the image reference and the MathML with appropriate HTML @class or @id values to enable dynamic rendering based on browser capability. All other direct-child elements of <equation-figure> are treated normally.

Specialization hierarchy
The <equation-figure> element is specialized from <fig>. It is defined in the equation domain module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), and display attributes (191).

Example
In the following code sample, the <equation-figure> element contains a title and MathML:

```
<equation-figure>
  <title>Display equation with a MathML container</title>
  <mathml>
    <m:math display='block'>
      <m:semantics>
        <m:mrow>
          <m:mfrac>
            <m:mrow><m:mi>n</m:mi><m:mo>!</m:mo></m:mrow>
            <m:mrow><m:mi>r</m:mi><m:mo>!</m:mo>
            <m:mrow>
              <m:mo>(</m:mo>
              <m:mrow><m:mi>n</m:mi><m:mo>&#x2212;</m:mo><m:mi>r</m:mi></m:mrow>
              <m:mo>)</m:mo>
            </m:mrow>
          </m:mfrac>
        </m:mrow>
      </m:semantics>
    </m:math>
  </mathml>
</equation-figure>
```

In the following example, the <equation-figure> element contains a title and an <equation-block> element that contains MathML and commentary:

```
<equation-figure>
  <title>Display equation with a MathML container</title>
  <equation-block>
    <mathml>
      <m:math display='block'>
        <m:semantics>
          <m:mrow>
            <m:mfrac>
              <m:mrow><m:mi>n</m:mi><m:mo>!</m:mo></m:mrow>
              <m:mrow><m:mi>r</m:mi><m:mo>!</m:mo>
              <m:mrow>
                <m:mo>(</m:mo>
                <m:mrow><m:mi>n</m:mi><m:mo>&#x2212;</m:mo><m:mi>r</m:mi></m:mrow>
                <m:mo>)</m:mo>
              </m:mrow>
            </m:mfrac>
          </m:mrow>
        </m:semantics>
      </m:math>
    </mathml>
  </equation-block>
  <p>Where <equation-inline><mathml><m:math><m:mi>r</m:mi></m:math></mathml></equation-inline> is greater than 1.</p>
</equation-figure>
```
4.3.1.3 <equation-inline>

The <equation-inline> element represents an equation that is presented inline within a paragraph or similar context.

Usage information

Inline equations are not intended to be numbered.

When an <equation-inline> element has multiple direct child elements, each child represents an alternative form of the equation.

Processing expectations

Comment by robander on 21 May 2021
Realizing that this same language appears in equation block / figure / inline, we should crisp it up and move it to the TC reuse file.
Disposition: Unassigned

Processors are free to choose the form or forms that they use in deliverables. For example, if there is both an image and MathML markup, an HTML-generating processor could generate both the image reference and the MathML with appropriate HTML @class or @id values to enable dynamic rendering based on browser capability.

Specialization hierarchy

The <equation-inline> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the equation domain module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example

The following example contains a paragraph that contains an <equation-inline> element with MathML markup:

```xml
<p>MathML inline: <equation-inline>
  <mathml>
    <m:math display='inline'>
      <m:semantics>
        <m:mrow>
          <m:msqrt>
            <m:mrow>
              <m:msup><m:mi>a</m:mi><m:mn>2</m:mn></m:msup>
              + <m:msup><m:mi>b</m:mi><m:mn>2</m:mn></m:msup>
            </m:mrow>
          </m:msqrt>
        </m:mrow>
      </m:semantics>
    </m:math>
  </mathml>
</equation-inline></p>
```
The following example contains an `<equation-inline>` element that uses an image as its content:

```xml
<p>An inline equation that contains an image:
   <equation-inline>
     <image keyref="equation-image-01">
       <alt>a squared plus b squared.</alt>
     </image>
   </equation-inline>
</p>
```

### 4.3.1.4 `<equation-number>`

The `<equation-number>` element indicates that a block equation is numbered and, optionally, specifies the number to use for the block equation.

#### Usage information

In normal usage a block equation will have at most one number. However, `<equation-number>` can occur multiple times within `<equation-block>`, for example, to allow numbers with different (and exclusive) conditional properties.

#### Rendering expectations

| 003 (171) | When the `<equation-number>` element has empty or whitespace-only content, the equation number SHOULD be generated. When the `<equation-number>` element has non-whitespace-only content the content SHOULD be used as the equation number. For explicit numbers the content of the element SHOULD be the number value without any surrounding punctuation, for example, "3.2a" rather than "(3.2a)". Processors SHOULD add punctuation or decoration to the number as appropriate. |

The details of equation numbering and number presentation are processor-specific. However, common practice is to present the equation number to the right of the equation, centered vertically within the vertical extent of the block equation.

#### Comment by robander on 21 may 2021

Can we rephrase “non-whitespace-only”, maybe as “element is not empty”? Maybe we could start by stating that white-space only is equivalent to empty, and then we can only talk about empty/not empty?

Seems overboard to say processors SHOULD add punctuation "as appropriate", that sort of turns it into a MAY or might?

Do we really need “However” in the common practice?

**Disposition: Unassigned**

#### Specialization hierarchy

The `<equation-number>` element is specialized from `<ph>`. It is defined in the equation domain module.

#### Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).
Example
The following code sample shows an equation with a generated number:

```xml
<p>A block equation using an image:</p>
<equation-block id="eq-001">
  <equation-number/>
  <image keyref="equation-image-01">
    <alt>a squared plus b squared.</alt>
  </image>
</equation-block>
```

The following code sample shows an equation with an explicit number:

```xml
<p>A block equation using an image:</p>
<equation-block id="eq-3.2a">
  <equation-number>3.2a</equation-number>
  <image keyref="equation-image-01">
    <alt>a squared plus b squared.</alt>
  </image>
</equation-block>
```

4.3.2 Hardware domain
The hardware domain elements are used to document physical devices.

4.3.2.1 <hwcontrol>
The <hwcontrol> element represents the name of a key, button, switch, or other physical control on a device.

Usage information
Implementations that require different output for different types of hardware controls can use the @outputclass attribute to distinguish between different types of usage.

Specialization hierarchy
The <hwcontrol> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the hardware domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
The following code sample shows how <hwcontrol> can be used within task steps to identify hardware controls:

```xml
<step><cmd>If the command is already running, select the command window and press <hwcontrol>CTRL+C</hwcontrol> to end processing.</cmd></step>
```

4.3.2.2 <partno>
The <partno> element represents a part number.

Specialization hierarchy
The <partno> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the hardware domain module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
The following code sample shows how <partno> can be used to identify a part number:

```
<p>The basic model, <partno>DB-123-456</partno>, is an entry model. Most users can take advantage of all features with little to no set up. The <partno>DB-123-456</partno> is available with all systems.
```

4.3.3 Markup domain
The markup domain contains an element that can be used for the mention of named components in markup languages.

4.3.3.1 <markupname>
The <markupname> element identifies named markup components, for example, elements or attributes in XML and SGML, named groups in XSD schemas, and named patterns in RELAX NG schemas.

Usage information
The <markupname> element serves as the specialization basis for the elements in the XML mention domain. When the XML mention domain is present, use its more specific elements instead of <markupname> if appropriate.

Specialization hierarchy
The <markupname> element is specialized from <keyword>. It is defined in the markup domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
The following code sample shows how the <markupname> element can be used to tag an attribute group:

```
The <markupname>p.attributes</markupname> attribute group defines the allowed attributes for the <xmelement>p</xmelement> element.
```

4.3.4 MathML domain
The MathML domain elements enable direct use of MathML markup within DITA documents, as well as use-by-reference of MathML markup that is stored separate, non-DITA documents. MathML is a W3C standard.

For MathML markup that is stored directly in DITA documents that are validated using DTDs, the MathML elements must use a namespace prefix in order to avoid conflict with the DITA-defined elements of the same name. Documents validated using XSD or RELAX NG can default the MathML namespace on the MathML <math> element. MathML elements that are referenced using the <mathmlref> element do not need to have a namespace prefix, because they are parsed separately from the DITA documents that
refer to them. By default, the MathML domain is configured to use the namespace prefix "m" for the MathML elements.

Related information
Mathematical Markup Language (MathML), Version 3.0

4.3.4.1 <mathml>
The <mathml> element contains MathML markup or other content that contributes to a semantic equation.

Usage information
MathML element content includes MathML elements, references to MathML elements held in separate, non-DITA documents, or <data> elements.

The <mathml> element is not intended to represent a semantic equation, only content that contributes to a semantic equation. Use the equation domain elements or their equivalent to represent equations semantically, for example, to enable numbering of equations.

The MathML markup must have a root element of <math> within the MathML namespace: "http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML".

Specialization hierarchy
The <mathml> element is specialized from <foreign>. It is defined in the MathML domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
In the following code sample, a <mathml> element contains MathML content:

```xml
<equation-block>
  <mathml>
    <m:math>
      <m:semantics>
        <m:mrow>
          <m:msqrt>
            <m:mrow>
              <m:msup><m:mi>a</m:mi><m:mn>2</m:mn></m:msup>
              <m:mo>+</m:mo>
              <m:msup><m:mi>b</m:mi><m:mn>2</m:mn></m:msup>
            </m:mrow>
          </m:msqrt>
        </m:mrow>
      </m:semantics>
    </m:math>
  </mathml>
</equation-block>
```
4.3.4.2 <mathmlref>

The <mathmlref> element is a reference to a non-DITA XML document that contains MathML markup.

Usage information

The <mathmlref> element enables you to use MathML markup by reference.

The reference must be to a MathML <math> element. The reference can be one of the following:

- A URI that addresses an XML document; the XML document has a MathML <math> element as the root element
- A URI that addresses an XML document and contains a fragment identifier that is the XML ID of a <math> element within the document

The reference can be direct, using the @href attribute, or indirect, using the @keyref attribute. For indirect referencing, specify only the key name. Specify the ID of the <mathml> element as part of the value for the @href attribute on the key definition.

For example, to refer to the <math> element with the @id of "equation-02" within a larger document using a key reference, you would define the key in the following way:

```xml
<keydef
  keys="mathml-equation-02"
  href="math/mathml-equations.xml#equation-02"
  format="mathml"/>
```

You would refer to this key using just the key name:

```xml
<mathml>
  <mathmlref keyref="mathml-equation-02"/>
</mathml>
```

Processing expectations

004 (171) Processors SHOULD process the MathML as though the <m:math> element had occurred directly in the content of the containing <mathml> element.

Specialization hierarchy

The <mathmlref> element is specialized from <include>. It is defined in the MathML domain module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), inclusion attributes (191), @format (195), @href (196), @keyref (196), and @scope (200).

For this element:

- The @format attribute has a default value of "mml".
- The @parse attribute has a default value of "xml".
Example

The following code sample shows a reference to a `<math>` element that is the root element of its containing document:

```
<equation-block>
  <mathml>
    <mathmlref href="../mathml-source/mathml-root-mathml.mml"/>
  </mathml>
</equation-block>
```

The `mathml-root-mathml.mml` file contains the following content. Note that the `<math>` element sets the MathML namespace as the default namespace, so there are no namespace prefixes on the MathML markup:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<math xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML"
      xmlns:xlink="http://www.w3.org/1999/xlink">
  <mstyle displaystyle="false" scriptlevel="0">
    <mrow>
      <mfrac>
        <mrow>
          <mi mathcolor="gray">sin</mi>
          <mo rspace="verythinmathspace"></mo>
          <mi>θ</mi>
        </mrow>
        <mi>π</mi>
      </mfrac>
    </mrow>
  </mstyle>
</math>
```

The following code sample shows a reference to a specific `<math>` element in a containing XML file:

```
<equation-block>
  <mathml>
    <mathmlref href="../mathml-source/mathml-equation-library.xml#mathfrag-02"/>
  </mathml>
</equation-block>
```

The `mathml-equation-library.xml` file contains the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<root>
  <part>
    <math id="timeinday"
         xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML">
      <mi>x</mi>
    </math>
  </part>
  <part>
    <math id="mathfrag-02"
         xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML">
      <mrow>
        <mi>y</mi><mo>=</mo><mn>5</mn><mi>x</mi><mo>+</mo><mn>2</mn>
      </mrow>
    </math>
  </part>
  <part>
    <m:math id="mathfrag-03" display="inline" overflow="scroll"
            xmlns:m="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML">
      <m:mrow><m:mi>y</m:mi><m:mo>=</m:mo><m:mi>m</m:mi><m:mi>x</m:mi><m:mo>+</m:mo><m:mi>b</m:mi></m:mrow>
    </m:math>
  </part>
</root>
```
4.3.5 Programming domain
The programming domain elements are used to define the syntax for programming languages. They can also be used to provide examples.

4.3.5.1 <apiname>
The <apiname> element identifies the name of an application programming interface (API), such as a Java class name or method name.

Specialization hierarchy
The <apiname> is specialized from <keyword>. It is defined in the programming domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
The following code sample shows how the <apiname> element can be used to identify the `document.write` method:
```xml
<p>Use the <apiname>document.write</apiname> method to create text output in the dynamically constructed view.</p>
```

4.3.5.2 <codeblock>
The <codeblock> element identifies lines of program code.

Rendering expectations
005 (171) Processors SHOULD preserve line the breaks and spaces that are present in the content of a <codeblock> element.

Specialization hierarchy
The <codeblock> is specialized from <pre>. It is defined in the programming domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), , and @xml:space (202).

Example
The following code sample shows how the <codeblock> element can be used to tag an excerpt from the code for a program:
```xml
<codeblock>
/* a long sample program */
Do forever
   Say "Hello, World"
End
</codeblock>
```
4.3.5.3 <codeph>

The <codeph> element identifies a code snippet.

**Specialization hierarchy**

The <codeph> is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the programming domain module.

**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

**Example**

In the following code sample, the <codeph> element identifies a code snippet. The code snippet will be rendered in-line in the paragraph.

```
<p>The second line of the sample program code, <codeph>Do forever</codeph>, represents the start of a loop construct.</p>
```

4.3.5.4 <coderef>

The <coderef> element references an external file that contains literal code.

**Rendering expectations**

When evaluated, the <coderef> element causes the target code to be displayed inline. If the target code contains non-XML characters such as '<' or '&', those characters need to be handled so that they can be displayed correctly by the final rendering engine.

**Specialization hierarchy**

The <coderef> is specialized from <include>. It is defined in the programming domain module.

**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), inclusion attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and @keyref (196).

For this element, the @parse attribute has a default value of "text".

**Example**

In the following code sample, the <coderef> element references the content of the process-dita.xsl file. In the rendered output, the XSL code will be presented in a code block.

```xml
<example>
  <title>Processing DITA</title>
  <p>This code is an example of how to process DITA.</p>
  <codeblock>
    <coderef href="process-dita.xsl"/>
  </codeblock>
</example>
```
4.3.5.5 <option>
The <option> element describes an option that can modify a command or a configuration.

Specialization hierarchy
The <option> is specialized from <keyword>. It is defined in the programming domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
The following code sample shows how the command line options for a tool are defined in a list:

```xml
<p>The most common command line options include:</p>
<ul>
  <li><option>-compress</option> will generate data in compressed form.</li>
  <li><option>-debug</option> will generate debug information while running.</li>
  <li><option>-help</option> will print extended help information.</li>
</ul>
```

4.3.5.6 <parmname>
The <parmname> element identifies the name of an API parameter.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 18 October 2022
Do we want to broaden the definition? I think this element is used more broadly than just API parameters. In fact, the example in this topic shows it used as a parameter to a command.

Disposition: Unassigned

Specialization hierarchy
The <parmname> is specialized from <keyword>. It is defined in the programming domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
The following code sample shows how the <parmname> element can be used to identify a parameter that is used with the config command:

```xml
<p>Use the <parmname>/env</parmname> parameter of the <cmdname>config</cmdname> command to update the field value.</p>
```
4.3.5.7 <parml>
The `<parml>` element identifies a specialized definition list that is designed for documenting API parameters.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The `<parml>` is specialized from `<dl>`. It is defined in the programming domain module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: `universal attributes` (185) and `@compact` (194).

**Example**
The following code sample shows how a set of sample code is followed by a parameter list that defines those parameters.

```xml
<p>This code example is a basic method signature:</p>
<codeblock>returnType methodName(pList1, pList2)</codeblock>
<p>The method requires the following parameters:</p>
<parml>
  <plentry>
    <pt>pList1</pt>
    <pd>is the first variable declaration passed to methodName</pd>
  </plentry>
  <plentry>
    <pt>pList2</pt>
    <pd>is the second variable declaration passed to methodName</pd>
  </plentry>
</parml>
```

The rendered version of that sample might look like:

This code example is a basic method signature:

```java
returnType methodName(pList1, pList2) {

The method requires two parameters:
 pList1
     is the first variable declaration passed to methodName
 pList2
     is the second variable declaration passed to methodName
```

**Comment by robander on 21 May 2021**
I am nervous about example output that simply uses the element; anyone republishing the spec with a broken tool can see broken output, and assume it is valid because the spec source says "it might look like this". I'm not sure the sample output is needed at all here, or it could be described in prose.

**Disposition: Unassigned**

4.3.5.8 <plentry>
The `<plentry>` element contains one or more parameter terms and definitions,

**Specialization hierarchy**
The `<plentry>` is specialized from `<dlentry>`. It is defined in the programming domain module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
See <parml> (124).

4.3.5.9 <pt>
The <pt> element specifies a parameter term within a parameter list entry.

Specialization hierarchy
The <pt> is specialized from <dt>. It is defined in the programming domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
See <parml> (124).

4.3.5.10 <pd>
The <pd> element specifies a parameter definition within a parameter list entry.

Specialization hierarchy
The <pd> is specialized from <dd>. It is defined in the programming domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
See <parml> (124).

4.3.6 Release management domain
The release-management domain elements contain human-authored information about the changes that have been made to a DITA topic or map. A processor can retrieve this information and use it to assemble documents or topics that contain release note information.

4.3.6.1 <change-completed>
The <change-completed> element indicates the date on which a change was completed.

Usage information
The recommended best practice is to use date strings that conform to the ISO 8601 standard, unless a UNIX-style machine time stamp is used. The string might contain a date and time (for example, 2017-04-05T12:30-02:00) or just a date (for example, 2019-03-04).
Specialization hierarchy

The `<change-completed>` is specialized from `<data>`. It is defined in the release management domain module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), and `@name` (198).

Example

See the example in `<change-historylist>` (126).

4.3.6.2 `<change-historylist>`

The `<change-historylist>` element contains individual release notes, as represented by the `<change-item>` element.

Usage information

This element appears in the topic `<prolog>` or the map `<topicmeta>` element.

Specialization hierarchy

The `<change-historylist>` is specialized from `<metadata>`. It is defined in the release management domain module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example

This example shows three simple release notes added to a single topic. This topic is used in documentation for two products, A and B.

```xml
<!-- ... -->
<prolog>
<!-- ... -->
<change-historylist>
  <change-item product="productA productB">
    <change-person>Tom Cihak</change-person>
    <change-organization>JEDEC</change-organization>
    <change-started>2019-01-15</change-started>
    <change-completed>2019-03-23</change-completed>
    <change-summary>Made change 1 to both products</change-summary>
    <data>Details of change 1</data>
  </change-item>
  <change-item product="productA">
    <change-person>Tom Cihak</change-person>
    <change-completed>2019-06-07</change-completed>
    <change-summary>Made change 2 to product A</change-summary>
    <data>Details of change 2</data>
  </change-item>
  <change-item product="productA productB">
    <change-person>Tom Cihak</change-person>
    <change-revisionid>r23.4</change-revisionid>
    <change-request-reference>
      <change-request-system>example.com/my/queue/</change-request-system>
      <change-request-id>TCKT-1313</change-request-id>
    </change-request-reference>
    <change-completed>2019-07-20</change-completed>
    <change-summary>Made change 3 to both products</change-summary>
  </change-item>
</change-historylist>
```
4.3.6.3 <change-item>
The <change-item> element specifies the record of a single change to a DITA topic or map.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The <change-item> is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the release management domain module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), and @name (198).

**Example**
See the example in <change-historylist> (126).

4.3.6.4 <change-organization>
The <change-organization> element specifies the name of the organization that required a change.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The <change-organization> is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the release management domain module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), and @name (198).

**Example**
See the example in <change-historylist> (126).

4.3.6.5 <change-person>
The <change-person> element to specifies the name of the person who made a change.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The <change-person> is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the release management domain module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), and @name (198).

**Example**
See the example in <change-historylist> (126).
4.3.6.6 <change-request-id>
The <change-request-id> element specifies an identifier associated with the change request, such as an issue ID or ticket number.

Specialization hierarchy
The <change-request-id> is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the release management domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), and @name (198).

Example
See the example in <change-historylist> (126).

4.3.6.7 <change-request-reference>
The <change-request-reference> element provides information that links the change to an external tracking system.

Specialization hierarchy
The <change-request-reference> is specialized from <metadata>. It is defined in the release management domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), and @name (198).

Example
See the example in <change-historylist> (126).

4.3.6.8 <change-request-system>
The <change-request-system> element specifies the name of an information system that manages or serves the referenced change request, for example, an issue tracking system.

Specialization hierarchy
The <change-request-system> is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the release management domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), and @name (198).

Example
See the example in <change-historylist> (126).
4.3.6.9 <change-revisionid>

The `<change-revisionid>` element specifies a revision ID string that can identify the change.

**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<change-revisionid>` is specialized from `<data>`. It is defined in the release management domain module.

**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), and @name (198).

**Example**

See the example in `<change-historylist>` (126).

4.3.6.10 <change-started>

The `<change-started>` element specifies the date on which the change was initiated.

**Usage information**

The recommended best practice is to use date strings that conform to the ISO 8601 standard, unless a UNIX-style machine time stamp is used. The string might contain a date and time (for example, 2017-04-05T12:30-02:00) or just a date (for example, 2019-03-04).

**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<change-started>` is specialized from `<data>`. It is defined in the release management domain module.

**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), and @name (198).

**Example**

See the example in `<change-historylist>` (126).

4.3.6.11 <change-summary>

The `<change-summary>` element summarizes the details of a change.

**Usage information**

This element contains the portion of the release note that might appear in a document.

**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<change-summary>` is specialized from `<data>`. It is defined in the release management domain module.
**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), and @name (198).

**Example**
See the example in `<change-historylist>` (126).

### 4.3.7 Software domain
The software domain elements are used to describe the operation of a software program.

#### 4.3.7.1 `<msgph>`
The `<msgph>` element identifies the text of a message that is produced by an application or program.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The `<msgph>` element is specialized from `<ph>`. It is defined in the software domain module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

**Example**
The following code sample shows how the `<msgph>` element can be used to tag a message that is returned by the server:

```xml
<p>A server log entry of `<msgnum>I:0</msgnum>` is equivalent to the text message, `<msgph>informational: successful</msgph>`.</p>
```

#### 4.3.7.2 `<msgblock>`
The `<msgblock>` element contains a multi-line message or set of messages.

**Usage information**
The `<msgblock>` element can contain multiple message numbers and message descriptions, each enclosed in `<msgnum>` and `<msgph>` elements. It can also contain the message content directly.

**Rendering expectations**

006 (171) Processors SHOULD preserve the line breaks and spaces that are present in the content of a `<msgblock>` element.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The `<msgblock>` element is specialized from `<pre>`. It is defined in the software domain module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), display attributes (191), and @xml:space (202).
Example
The following code sample shows a <msgblock> element that contains a multi-line message that is returned by an application:

```xml
<p>A sequence of failed password attempts generates the following message stream:</p>
<msgblock>
  I:0
  S:3
  I:1
  S:3
  I:4
  S:99 (lockup)
</msgblock>
```

4.3.7.3 <msgnum>
The <msgnum> element identifies the number of a message that is produced by an application or program.

Specialization hierarchy
The <msgnum> element is specialized from <keyword>. It is defined in the software domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
The following code sample shows a <msgnum> element that identifies the number of the message that is returned by an application:

```xml
<p>A server log entry of <msgnum>I:0</msgnum> is equivalent to the text message <msgph>informational: successful</msgph>.</p>
```

4.3.7.4 <cmdname>
The <cmdname> element identifies the name of a software command.

Specialization hierarchy
The <cmdname> element is specialized from <keyword>. It is defined in the software domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
The following code sample shows a <cmdname> element that identifies the name of the rm command:

```xml
<p>Use the <cmdname>rm</cmdname> command to permanently delete an object.</p>
```
4.3.7.5 <varname>
The <varname> element identifies a variable that is supplied to a software application.

Specialization hierarchy
The <varname> element is specialized from <keyword>. It is defined in the software domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
The following code sample shows how the <varname> element is used to identify variables that represent the "installation directory," "project directory," and "file name":

```xml
<filepath>
  <varname>install-dir</varname>
  \projects\working\<varname>project-dir</varname>
  \source\<varname>filename</varname>.java
</filepath>
```

4.3.7.6 <filepath>
The <filepath> element identifies file names and system paths.

Specialization hierarchy
The <filepath> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the software domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
In the following code sample, the <filepath> element is used to tag both file names and system paths:

```xml
<p>Uncompress the <filepath>gbbrsh.gz</filepath> file to the <filepath>/usr</filepath> directory. Ensure that the <filepath>/usr/tools/data.cfg</filepath> path is listed in the execution path system variable.</p>
```

4.3.7.7 <userinput>
The <userinput> element identifies text that a user types in response to an application or system prompt.

Specialization hierarchy
The <userinput> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the software domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).
Example

In the following code sample, the `<userinput>` element identifies text that a user should type at the command prompt:

```html
<p>From a DOS command prompt, type `<userinput>dir</userinput>` to view a list of files in the current directory.</p>
```

4.3.7.8 `<systemoutput>`
The `<systemoutput>` element identifies computer output or responses to a command or situation.

Specialization hierarchy

The `<systemoutput>` element is specialized from `<ph>`. It is defined in the software domain module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: `universal attributes` (185) and `@keyref` (196).

Example

In the following code sample, the `<systemoutput>` element identifies an application response to user input:

```html
<p>After you type `<userinput>mealplan dinner</userinput>`, the meal planning program will print `<systemoutput>For what day?</systemoutput>`. Reply by typing the day of the week for which you want a meal plan, for example, `<userinput>Thursday</userinput>`.</p>
```

4.3.8 SVG domain

The SVG domain elements enable direct use of SVG markup within DITA documents, as well as use-by-reference of SVG markup that is stored in separate non-DITA documents. SVG is a W3C standard.

For SVG markup that is stored directly in DITA documents that are validated using DTDs, the SVG elements must use a namespace prefix in order to avoid conflict with DITA-defined elements of the same name. Documents validated using XSD or RELAX NG can default the SVG namespace on the SVG `<svg>` element. SVG elements that are referenced using the `<svgref>` element do not need to have a namespace prefix, because they are parsed separately from the DITA documents that refer to them. By default, the SVG domain is configured to use the namespace prefix "svg" for the SVG elements.

Related information

 Scalable Vector Graphics (SVG) 1.1 (Second Edition)

4.3.8.1 `<svg-container>`
The `<svg-container>` element stores content that contributes to a scalable vector graphic (SVG).

Usage information

The `<svg-container>` content includes SVG elements, references to SVG elements that are stored in separate, non-DITA documents, or `<data>` elements.

The SVG markup must have a root element of `<svg>` with the SVG namespace: "http://www.w3.org/2000/svg".
Specialization hierarchy

The `<svg-container>` is specialized from `<foreign>`. It is defined in the SVG domain module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example

In the following example, an `<svg-container>` element contains inline SVG markup:

```xml
<svg-container>
  <svg:svg width="100" height="100">
    <svg:defs>
      <svg:filter id="f1" x="0" y="0">
        <svg:feGaussianBlur in="SourceGraphic" stdDeviation="15"/>
      </svg:filter>
    </svg:defs>
    <svg:rect width="90" height="90" stroke="green"
             stroke-width="3" fill="yellow" filter="url(#f1)"/>
  </svg:svg>
</svg-container>
```

<fig>
  <svg-container>
    <svg:svg width="200" height="200">
      <svg:ellipse cx="100" cy="100" rx="80" ry="80" style="fill:blue;
                                          stroke:rgb(0,0,100);stroke-width:2"/>
    </svg:svg>
  </svg-container>
</fig>
```
In the following example, the `<svgref>` element uses the `@keyref` attribute to address SVG markup that is stored in a separate, non-DITA document:

```xml
<fig>
  <title>Figure with SVG Container</title>
  <svg-container>
    <svgref keyref="svg-fragment-01"/>
  </svg-container>
</fig>
```

The key "svg-fragment-01" is declared in the following way:

```xml
<map>
  <!-- ... -->
  <keydef keys="svg-fragment-01"
      href="media/svg/svg-library.xml#frag-0001"
      format="svg"/>
  <!-- ... -->
</map>
```

4.3.8.2 `<svgref>`

The `<svgref>` element references a non-DITA XML document that contains scalable vector graphic (SVG) markup.

**Usage information**

This element enables you to use SVG markup by reference. The reference must be to a SVG `<svg>` element. The reference can be one of the following:

- A URI that addresses an XML document; the XML document has a SVG `<svg>` element as the root element
- A URI that addresses an XML document and contains a fragment identifier that is the XML ID of a `<svg>` element within the document

The reference can be direct, using the `@href` attribute, or indirect, using the `@keyref` attribute. For indirect referencing, only the key name should be specified. The ID of the `<svg>` element must be specified as part of the value for the `@href` attribute on the key definition.

For example, to refer to the `<svg>` element with the `@id` of "svg-fragment-02" within a larger document using a key reference, you would define the key in the following way:

```xml
<keydef
  keys="svg-fragment-0002"
  href="svg/svg-library.xml#svg-fragment-02"/>
```

You would refer to this key using just the key name:

```xml
<svg-container>
  <svgref keyref="svg-fragment-0002"/>
</svg-container>
```

**Processing information**

007 (171) Processors **SHOULD** process the SVG as though the `<svg>` element had occurred directly in the content of the containing `<svg-container>` element.
Specialization hierarchy

The `<svgref>` is specialized from `<include>`. It is defined in the SVG domain module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185), inclusion attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and @keyref (196).

For this element:

- The `@format` attribute has a default value of "svg".
- The `@href` attribute is a reference to an SVG document or SVG element. If the `<svg>` element is the root element of the referenced resource, then no fragment identifier is required, otherwise, a fragment identifier must be specified, where the fragment identifier is the XML ID of the `<svg>` element to be used.
- The `@parse` attribute has a default value of "xml".

Example

The following code sample shows a reference to an `<svg>` element that is the root element of its containing document:

```xml
<fig>
  <title>Figure With SVG Container</title>
  <svg-container>
    <svgref href="media/svg/svg-graphic-01.xml"/>
  </svg-container>
</fig>
```

The `svg-graphic-01.xml` file contains the following content. Note that the `<svg>` element sets the SVG namespace as the default namespace, so there are no namespace prefixes on the SVG markup:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<svg xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg" width="100" height="100">
  <defs>
    <filter id="f1" x="0" y="0">
      <feGaussianBlur in="SourceGraphic" stdDeviation="15"/>
    </filter>
  </defs>
  <rect width="90" height="90" stroke="green" stroke-width="3"
       fill="yellow" filter="url(#f1)"/>
</svg>
```

The following code sample shows a reference to a specific `<svg>` element in a containing XML file:

```xml
<fig>
  <title>Figure with SVG Container</title>
  <svg-container>
    <svgref href="media/svg/svg-library.xml#frag-0001"/>
  </svg-container>
</fig>
```

The `svg-library.xml` file contains the following content:

```xml
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<root>
  <part>
    <svg id="frag-0001" xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2000/svg" width="100" height="100">
      <defs>
        <filter id="f1" x="0" y="0">
          <feGaussianBlur in="SourceGraphic" stdDeviation="15"/>
        </filter>
      </defs>
```

standards-track work product

Copyright © OASIS Open 2022. All Rights Reserved.
4.3.9 Syntax diagram domain
The syntax diagram domain elements are used to diagram expressions or syntax phrases for programming languages or command line processors.

The syntax diagram domain is specialized from the programming domain, and uses elements from that domain within the content model of syntax phrases.

4.3.9.1 <synph>
The <synph> element identifies a syntax phrase.

Usage information
The <synph> element is used when a complete syntax diagram is not needed, but some of the syntax elements, such as <kw>, <oper>, or <delim> are used within the text flow of the topic content.

Specialization hierarchy
The <synph> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

Example
In the following code sample, the <synph> element is used to identify syntax phrase that must be run before a task.

```xml
<task id="setup-volume">
  <title>Setting up a new volume</title>
  <shortdesc>This task will help you set up a new volume for your account.</shortdesc>
</task>
```
Before starting this procedure, ensure that you have requested the volume using the `<synph>` variable `volumename` command. 

```xml
<!-- ... -->
</taskbody>
</task>

4.3.9.2 `<syntaxdiagram>`

The `<syntaxdiagram>` element represents the syntax of a command, function call, or programming language statement.

**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<syntaxdiagram>` element is specialized from `<fig>`. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.

**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: `universal attributes` (185) and `display attributes` (191).

**Example**

In the following code sample, a `<syntaxdiagram>` is used to illustrate the syntax of a basic file-copy command. The initial `COPYF` command is followed by the input directory and file name. The input is followed by a choice of either an output directory (and optional file name) or a file name.

```xml
<!-- ... -->
</syntaxdiagram>
</title>
</groupseq>
</groupcomp>
</groupchoice>
</syntaxdiagram>

4.3.9.3 `<groupseq>`

The `<groupseq>` element is a set of command syntax that is done in a specific sequence.

**Usage information**

Each syntax group is a logical set of pieces of syntax that go together. Within the syntax definition, groups of keywords, delimiters and other syntax units act as a combined unit, and they occur in a specific sequence, as delimited by the `<groupseq>` element.

**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<groupseq>` element is specialized from `<figgroup>`. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.

**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: `universal attributes` (185).
For this element, the @importance attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or used by default. The attribute value is limited to "optional", "required", "default", or "-dita-use-conref-target".

Example

In the following code sample, a short set of command line syntax is specified in a sequential order: the runprogram tool name, followed by a choice of how to specify an input file.

```<syntaxdiagram>
<title>Syntax for runprogram command</title>
<groupseq>
  <kwd>runprogram</kwd>
  <groupchoice>
    <groupcomp><oper>-</oper><kwd>i</kwd><sep>:</sep><var>program-name.py</var></groupcomp>
    <groupcomp><oper>--</oper><kwd>input</kwd><sep>=</sep><var>program-name.py</var></groupcomp>
  </groupchoice>
</groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

4.3.9.4 <groupchoice>
The <groupchoice> element provides a set of choices for how to proceed through a syntax diagram.

Usage information

Each syntax group is a logical set of pieces of syntax that go together. A group choice specifies that the user must make a choice about which part of the syntax to use. Groups are often nested.

Specialization hierarchy

The <groupchoice> element is specialized from <figgroup>. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

For this element, the @importance attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or used by default. The attribute value is limited to "optional", "required", "default", or "-dita-use-conref-target".

Example

In the following code sample, the diagram presents a choice of two alternate ways to specify an input file name to a command line program.

```<syntaxdiagram>
<title>Syntax for runprogram command</title>
<groupseq>
  <kwd>runprogram</kwd>
  <groupchoice>
    <groupcomp><oper>-</oper><kwd>i</kwd><sep>:</sep><var>program-name.py</var></groupcomp>
    <groupcomp><oper>--</oper><kwd>input</kwd><sep>=</sep><var>program-name.py</var></groupcomp>
  </groupchoice>
</groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```
4.3.9.5 <groupcomp>
The <groupcomp> element is a set of syntax that makes up a single unit and is usually rendered as a single unit.

Usage information
Each syntax group is a logical set of pieces of syntax that go together. The group composite means that the items that make up the syntax diagram will be rendered close together rather than being separated by a horizontal or vertical line, which is the usual formatting method.

Specialization hierarchy
The <groupcomp> element is specialized from <figgroup>. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

For this element, the @importance attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or used by default. The attribute value is limited to "optional", "required", "default", or "-dita-use-conref-target".

Example
In the following code sample, two composite groups represent two alternate ways to specify an input file to a command line program: either -i:program-name.py or --input=program-name.ph.

```xml
<syntaxdiagram>
<title>Syntax for runprogram command</title>
<groupseq>
  <kwd>runprogram</kwd>
  <groupchoice>
    <groupcomp><oper>-</oper><kwd>i</kwd><sep>:</sep><var>program-name.py</var></groupcomp>
    <groupcomp><oper>--</oper><kwd>input</kwd><sep>=</sep><var>program-name.py</var></groupcomp>
  </groupchoice>
</groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

4.3.9.6 <fragment>
The <fragment> element contains a labeled subpart of the syntax within a <syntaxdiagram>.

Usage information
The <fragment> element allows breaking out logical chunks of a large syntax diagram into named fragments.

Specialization hierarchy
The <fragment> element is specialized from <figgroup>. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).
Example

In the following code sample, the <fragment> element is used to break out a set of related logging options from the larger set of syntax. This allows the logging options to be displayed separately in a titled group, out of the flow of the primary diagram.

```xml
<syntaxdiagram>
<title>Syntax for runprogram command</title>
<groupseq>
  <kwdf>runprogram</kwdf>
  <groupchoice>
    <groupcomp><oper>-</oper><kwdf>i</kwdf><sep>:</sep><var>program-name.py</var></groupcomp>
    <groupcomp><oper>--</oper><kwdf>input</kwdf><sep>=</sep><var>program-name.py</var></groupcomp>
  </groupchoice>
  <fragref href="#./logging">Logging options</fragref>
</groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

4.3.9.7 <fragref>

The <fragref> element provides a logical reference to a <fragment> element within a syntax diagram, so that you can reference a syntax fragment multiple times or pull a large section of syntax out of line for easier reading.

Specialization hierarchy

The <fragref> element is specialized from <xref>. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @href (196).

For this element:

- The @href attribute is a reference to a syntax diagram <fragment>. The referenced <fragment> must be in the same diagram as the <fragref> element.
- The @importance attribute is limited to the values "optional", "required", or "-dita-use-conref-target".

Example

In the following code sample, the <fragref> element is used to break out a set of related logging options from the larger set of syntax. The <fragref> element is part of the program sequence after an input file, but the syntax for logging is defined outside of the main diagram.

```xml
<syntaxdiagram>
<title>Syntax for runprogram command</title>
<groupseq>
  <kwdf>runprogram</kwdf>
  <groupchoice>
    <groupcomp><oper>-</oper><kwdf>i</kwdf><sep>:</sep><var>program-name.py</var></groupcomp>
    <groupcomp><oper>--</oper><kwdf>input</kwdf><sep>=</sep><var>program-name.py</var></groupcomp>
  </groupchoice>
  <fragref href="#./logging">Logging options</fragref>
</groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```
might produce output like the following:

CopyFile

```plaintext
>>>-COPYF--input-filename*INFILE--output-filename--*OUTFILE-------
>---| Overlay |---+input-filename+++output-filename+-------->+--------
'--*INFILE--------' '+*OUTFILE--------'
Overlay
|++++*OVERLAP+-----------------------------|
'++*Prompt='
```

### 4.3.9.8 `<synblk>`

The `<synblk>` (syntax block) element organizes small pieces of a syntax definition into a larger piece.

#### Specialization hierarchy

The `<synblk>` element is specialized from `<figgroup>`. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.

#### Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: [universal attributes](185).

#### Example

In the following code sample, `<synblk>` elements are used to group sets of related options for user profile parameters that might be reused in many different sets of syntax.

```xml
<synblk id="profileopts">
  <title>Required profile options</title>
  <groupcomp><oper>--</oper><kwd>user</kwd><sep>=</sep><var>userid</var></groupcomp>
  <groupcomp><oper>--</oper><kwd>region</kwd><sep>=</sep><var>homeregion</var></groupcomp>
</synblk>
```

This block can now be reused in syntax descriptions that always begin with the three profile parameters described in that syntax block:

```xml
<syntaxdiagram>
  <title>Request file listing</title>
  <groupseq>
    <kwd>clicmd</kwd>
    <synblk conkeyref="syntax-library/profileopts"/>
    <groupcomp><oper>--</oper><kwd>filelist</kwd><sep>=</sep><var>volumeid</var></groupcomp>
  </groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```
4.3.9.9 <synnote>
The <synnote> element contains a note (similar to a footnote) within a syntax definition group or fragment.

Usage information
The syntax note explains aspects of the syntax that cannot be expressed in the markup itself.

Rendering expectations
The note typically appears at the bottom of the syntax diagram instead of at the bottom of the page.

Specialization hierarchy
The <synnote> element is specialized from <fn>. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and the attribute defined below.

Example
In the following code sample, a syntax note reminds the reader where to find information for a required user ID parameter.

```xml
<syntaxdiagram id="validate">
  <title>Validate account setup</title>
  <groupseq>
    <kwd>clicmd</kwd>
    <groupcomp>
      <oper>--</oper>
      <kwd>user</kwd>
      <sep>=</sep>
      <var>userid</var>
      <synnote>
        Your user ID can be found in your account activation email.
      </synnote>
    </groupcomp>
    <groupcomp>
      <oper>--</oper>
      <kwd>validate</kwd>
    </groupcomp>
  </groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

4.3.9.10 <synnoteref>
The <synnoteref> element references a syntax note element (<synnote>) that has already been defined elsewhere in the syntax diagram.

Usage information
The same notation can be used in more than one syntax definition.

Specialization hierarchy
The <synnoteref> element is specialized from <xref>. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @href (196).
For this element, the @href attribute is a reference to a syntax note within the same syntax diagram.

Example
In the following code sample, a syntax note is reused twice in the sample diagram, instructing the reader how to request a modified user name or password.

```xml
<syntaxdiagram id="validate">
<title>Validate account setup</title>
<groupseq>
  <kwd>clicmd</kwd>
  <groupcomp>
    <oper>--</oper><kwd>user</kwd><sep>=</sep><var>account_id</var><synnoteref href="#./reset"/>
  </groupcomp>
  <groupcomp>
    <oper>--</oper><kwd>pwd</kwd><sep>=</sep><var>password_key</var><synnoteref href="#./reset"/>
  </groupcomp>
  <oper>--</oper><kwd>validate</kwd>
</groupseq>
<synnote id="reset">If you have forgotten your account ID or password key, please contact customer support.</synnote>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

4.3.9.11 <kwd>
The <kwd> element identifies a keyword within a syntax diagram or phrase.

Usage information
A <kwd> might be entered by a user typing in the syntax, or rendered by an application as part of a syntax prompt. The keyword value is typed or rendered exactly as specified in the syntax diagram or phrase.

Specialization hierarchy
The <kwd> element is specialized from <keyword>. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).
For this element, the @importance attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or used by default. The attribute value is limited to "optional", "required", "default", or "-dita-use-conref-target".

Example
In the following code sample, the <kwd> element identifies text that must be provided to the application exactly as specified:

```xml
<syntaxdiagram id="validate">
<title>Validate account setup</title>
```
4.3.9.12 <var>
The <var> element identifies a variable within a syntax diagram or phrase.

Specialization hierarchy
The <var> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

For this element, the @importance attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or used by default. The attribute value is limited to "optional", "required", "default", or "-dita-use-conref-target".

Example
In the following code sample, the <var> element identifies variables for which the user will substitute the names of the input and output files:

```xml
<syntaxdiagram frame="bottom">
<title>CopyFile</title>
<groupseq><kwd>COPYF</kwd></groupseq>
<groupcomp><var>input-filename</var><kwd>*INFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
<groupcomp><var>output-filename</var><kwd>*OUTFILE</kwd></groupcomp>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

4.3.9.13 <oper>
The <oper> element identifies an operator within a syntax definition.

Usage information
Typical operators are equals (=), plus (+) or multiply (*).

Specialization hierarchy
The <oper> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).
For this element, the @importance attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or used by default. The attribute value is limited to "optional", "required", "default", or "-dita-use-conref-target".

**Example**

In the following code sample, the <oper> element specifies that the operator in a math operation is plus (+):

```xml
<syntaxdiagram>
  <title>Integer addition</title>
  <groupseq>
    <var>integer</var>
    <oper>+</oper>
    <var>integer</var>
    <delim>=</delim>
    <var>total</var>
  </groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

4.3.9.14 <delim>

The <delim> element identifies a character that marks the beginning or end of a section within a syntax diagram.

**Usage information**

Typical delimiter characters are parentheses, commas, tabs, vertical bars, or other special characters.

**Specialization hierarchy**

The <delim> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.

**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

For this element, the @importance attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional or required. The attribute value is limited to "optional", "required", or "-dita-use-conref-target".

**Example**

In the following code sample, the <delim> element specifies that the equal sign (=) is used to mark the end of the group sequence.

```xml
<syntaxdiagram>
  <title>Integer addition</title>
  <groupseq>
    <var>integer</var>
    <oper>+</oper>
    <var>integer</var>
    <delim>=</delim>
    <var>total</var>
  </groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```
4.3.9.15 <sep>
The <sep> element defines a separator character that is inline with the content of a syntax diagram.

Usage information
The separator occurs between keywords, operators or groups in a syntax definition.

Specialization hierarchy
The <sep> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).
For this element, the @importance attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional, required, or used by default. The attribute value is limited to "optional", "required", "default", or "-dita-use-conref-target".

Example
In the following code sample, the <sep> element is used to separate a parameter name from a parameter value.

```xml
<syntaxdiagram id="validate">
  <title>Validate account setup</title>
  <groupseq>
    <kwd>clicmd</kwd>
    <groupcomp>
      <oper>--</oper>
      <kwd>user</kwd>
    </groupcomp>
    <sep>=</sep>
    <var>userid</var>
  </groupcomp>
  <groupcomp>
    <oper>--</oper>
    <kwd>validate</kwd>
  </groupcomp>
</groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

4.3.9.16 <repsep>
The <repsep> element identifies a character used in a syntax diagram to indicate that a group of syntax elements can (or should) be repeated.

Usage information
If the <repsep> element contains a separator character such as a plus (+), this indicates that the character must be used between repetitions of the syntax elements.

Specialization hierarchy
The <repsep> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the syntax diagram domain module, which is a specialization of the programming domain module.
Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185).

For this element, the @importance attribute indicates whether this item in a syntax diagram is optional or required. The attribute value is limited to “optional”, “required”, or “-dita-use-conref-target”.

Example

In the following code sample example, a file listing can be requested for multiple volumes. The <repsep> element identifies that each requested volume can be separated with a comma.

```xml
<syntaxdiagram>
  <title>Request file listing</title>
  <groupseq>
    <kwd>clicmd</kwd>
    <groupcomp><oper>--</oper><kwd>user</kwd><sep>=</sep><var>userid</var></groupcomp>
    <groupcomp>
      <repsep>,</repsep>
      <oper>--</oper><kwd>filelist</kwd><sep>=</sep><var>volumeid</var>
    </groupcomp>
  </groupseq>
</syntaxdiagram>
```

4.3.10 User interface domain

The user-interface domain elements are used to describe the user interface of a software program.

4.3.10.1 <uicontrol>

The <uicontrol> element identifies user interface controls, such as names of buttons, fields, menu items, and other objects that enable users to control an interface.

Usage information

The <uicontrol> element is also used inside a <menucascade> element to identify a sequence of menu choices in a nested menu, such as File > New.

Specialization hierarchy

The <uicontrol> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the user-interface domain module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example

The following code sample shows how the <uicontrol> element can be used to identify a button that a user is directed to press:

```xml
<p>Press <uicontrol>OK</uicontrol> to continue.</p>
```
4.3.10.2 <wintitle>
The <wintitle> element identifies named windows and dialogs.

Specialization hierarchy
The <wintitle> element is specialized from <keyword>. It is defined in the user-interface domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
The following code sample shows how the <wintitle> element can be used to tag the name of the "Configuration Options" window:

```xml
<step>
  <cmd>Click <uicontrol>Configure</uicontrol>.</cmd>
  <stepresult>The <wintitle>Configuration Options</wintitle> window opens with your last set of selections highlighted.</stepresult>
</step>
```

4.3.10.3 <menucascade>
The <menucascade> element identifies a sequence of menu choices in a nested menu, such as File > New.

Specialization hierarchy
The <menucascade> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the user-interface domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
The following code sample shows how the <menucascade> element can be used to identify a series of menu choices that enable users to launch the Notepad application:

```xml
<menucascade>
  <uicontrol>Start</uicontrol>
  <uicontrol>Programs</uicontrol>
  <uicontrol>Accessories</uicontrol>
  <uicontrol>Notepad</uicontrol>
</menucascade>
```

4.3.10.4 <shortcut>
The <shortcut> element identifies a keyboard shortcut for a menu or window action.

Specialization hierarchy
The <shortcut> element is specialized from <keyword>. It is defined in the user-interface domain module.
Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
In the following code sample, the <shortcut> element identifies the keyboard shortcut for the "Start Programs" menu action:

```xml
<menucascade>
  <uicontrol>Start</uicontrol>
  <uicontrol><shortcut>P</shortcut>rogram</uicontrol>
</menucascade>
```

4.3.10.5 <screen>
The <screen> element contains a textual representation of a terminal console or other text-based computer interface.

Rendering expectations

008 (171)  Processors SHOULD preserve the line breaks and spaces that are present in the content of a <screen> element.

Specialization hierarchy
The <screen> element is specialized from <pre>. It is defined in the user-interface domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: display attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @xml:space (202).

Example
In the following code sample, the <screen> element is used to provide a representation of a DOS window:

```xml
<screen>
  File  Edit  Search  View  Options  Help
  +--------------------------------- UNTITLED1 ----------------------------------+
  ¦                                                                              ¦
  ¦                                                                              ¦
  ¦                                                                              ¦
  ¦                                                                              ¦
  ¦  Line:1    Col:1  F1=Help                                                    ¦
  +------------------------------------------------------------------------------+
</screen>
```

4.3.11 XML mention domain
The XML mention domain is designed to describe and document XML document types and applications. It also can enable typographic styling, search and retrieval, and automatic indexing for XML constructs.

Note  Although the original XML 1.0 Recommendation reserved element names beginning with "xml" or "XML" for the use of the XML standard itself, the subsequent introduction of namespaces made the restriction unnecessary. The restriction was formally removed in the
4.3.11.1 <numcharref>
The <numcharref> element identifies mentions of XML numeric character references.

Usage information
The content of the <numcharref> element should be the numeric value without any leading or trailing characters, for example, "10" or "x0a".

Specialization hierarchy
The <numcharref> element is specialized from <markupname>, which is defined in the XML-mention domain module. The <markupname> element is specialized from <keyword>, which is defined in the markup-name domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
The following code sample shows how a <numcharref> element can be used to tag the numeric character reference for the a-acute Unicode character:

```
<p>Numeric character references represent characters from the Universal Character Set (UCS) of Unicode. They are used to reference characters that cannot easily be directly encoded in a document, such as a copyright symbol. When a markup-aware processor encounters a numeric character reference, for example, <numcharref>225</numcharref>, it renders the reference as the Unicode character that it represents: a-acute.</p>
```

4.3.11.2 <parameterentity>
The <parameterentity> element identifies mentions of parameter entities.

Usage information
The content of the <parameterentity> element should be the entity name without a leading percentage sign or trailing semi-colon, for example, "keyword.content".

Specialization hierarchy
The <parameterentity> element is specialized from <markupname>, which is defined in the XML-mention domain module. The <markupname> element is specialized from <keyword>, which is defined in the markup-name domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).
Examples

The following code sample shows how the `<parameterentity>` element can be used to tag the name of the %xml-d-dec; parameter entity:

```xml
<p>To include the XML-mention domain in a DTD document-type shell, declare and reference the `<parameterentity>`xml-d-dec`</parameterentity>` parameter entity.</p>
```

4.3.11.3 `<textentity>`

The `<textentity>` element identifies mentions of XML text entities.

Usage information

The content of the `<textentity>` element should be the entity name without the ampersand and semi-colon delimiters, for example, "hi-d-att".

Specialization hierarchy

The `<textentity>` element is specialized from `<markupname>`, which is defined in the XML-mention domain module. The `<markupname>` element is specialized from `<keyword>`, which is defined in the markup-name domain module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and `@keyref` (196).

Example

The following code sample shows how the `<textentity>` element is used to tag the token that the `@deliveryTarget` attribute domain contributes to the `@specializations` attribute:

```xml
<p>The `<textentity>`deliveryTargetAtt-d-att`</textentity>` entity holds the contribution for the `<xmlatt>specializations</xmlatt>` attribute.</p>
```

4.3.11.4 `<xmlatt>`

The `<xmlatt>` element identifies mentions of XML attributes.

Usage information

The content of the `<xmlatt>` element should be the attribute name without commercial at symbol (@) or equals character (=), for example, "audience".

Specialization hierarchy

The `<xmlatt>` element is specialized from `<markupname>`, which is defined in the XML-mention domain module. The `<markupname>` element is specialized from `<keyword>`, which is defined in the markup-name domain module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and `@keyref` (196).
Example
The following code sample shows how the `<xmlatt>` element can be used to tag mentions of the `@collection-type` and `@linking` attributes:

```xml
<xmlatt>collection-type</xmlatt> and `<xmlatt>linking</xmlatt>
attributes affect how related links are generated for topics that are referenced in the DITA map.</xmlatt>
```

4.3.11.5 `<xmlelement>`
The `<xmlelement>` element identifies mentions of XML element types.

Usage information
The content of the `<xmlelement>` element should be the element type name without leading or trailing angle brackets.

Specialization hierarchy
The `<xmlelement>` element is specialized from `<markupname>`, which is defined in the XML-mention domain module. The `<markupname>` element is specialized from `<keyword>`, which is defined in the markup-name domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: `universal attributes` (185) and `@keyref` (196).

Example
The following code sample shows how the `<xmlelement>` element can be used to tag the `<uicontrol>` element from the user-interface domain.

```xml
Use the `<xmlelement>uicontrol</xmlelement>` (user interface control) element to indicate the names of buttons, entry fields, menu items, or other objects that enable a user to interact with a graphical user interface.</xmlatt>
```

4.3.11.6 `<xmlnsname>`
The `<xmlnsname>` element identifies mentions of namespace names.

Specialization hierarchy
The `<xmlnsname>` element is specialized from `<markupname>`, which is defined in the XML-mention domain module. The `<markupname>` element is specialized from `<keyword>`, which is defined in the markup-name domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: `universal attributes` (185) and `@keyref` (196).
Example
The following code sample shows how an `<xmlnsname>` element can be used to tag the namespace for SVG:

```
<p>SVG markup is specified in an `<xmlelement>svg</xmlelement>` element with
the namespace `<xmlnamespace>http://www.w3.org/2000/svg</xmlnamespace>`.</p>
```

4.3.11.7 `<xmlpi>`
The `<xmlpi>` element identifies mentions of processing instruction names.

Specialization hierarchy
The `<xmlpi>` element is specialized from `<markupname>`, which is defined in the XML-mention domain module. The `<markupname>` element is specialized from `<keyword>`, which is defined in the markup-name domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and `@keyref` (196).

Example
The following code sample shows how an `<xmlpi>` element can be used to tag the name of a processing instruction:

```
<p>While DITA does not define any processing instructions, applications might
use some DocBook processing instructions, such as `<xmlpi>dbhtmlbgcolor</xmlpi>`.</p>
```

4.3.12 xNAL domain
The xNAL domain elements represent a subset of the Extensible Name and Address Standard. It is used to encode information about the author or authors of DITA information. The domain can be included in any DITA document type shell that requires additional metadata for names and addresses, although the implementations provided by OASIS only include it in the bookmap document type.

Comment by robander on 24 may 2021
General question about elements in this section:

- Should many of the examples just be referring to the example in `<authorinformation>`, rather than repeating? If yes - need to make the update; if no - need to add prose around the samples, and bold the relevant elements.
- Short descriptions often refer to "the person" or "the author" or "the organization" but that rarely makes sense in the context of a single element definition. Should it be a person / an author / etc? See 4.3.12.9 firstname (159) for specific example

Disposition: Unassigned
4.3.12.1 <authorinformation>
The <authorinformation> element contains detailed information about the author or authoring organization.

Specialization hierarchy
The <authorinformation> element is specialized from <author>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: link-relationship attributes (191), universal attributes (185), and @keyref (196).

Example
In the following code sample, the <authorinformation> element is used to provide detailed information about the author of a book map.

```xml
<bookmeta>
  <authorinformation>
    <personinfo>
      <namedetails><personname>
        <firstname>Derek</firstname>
        <middlename>L.</middlename>
        <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
        <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
        <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
      </personname></namedetails>
      <addressdetails>
        <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
        <locality>Emerald City</locality>
        <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
        <country>USA</country>
      </addressdetails>
      <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
      <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
    </personinfo>
  </authorinformation>
</bookmeta>
```

4.3.12.2 <addressdetails>
The <addressdetails> element contains information about the address of the author or authoring group.

Specialization hierarchy
The <addressdetails> is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example
Comment by robander on 24 May 2021
Can this and most of the XNAL examples just be a link to authorinformation?
4.3.12.3 <administrativearea>
The <administrativearea> element contains information about a county, state, or province.

Specialization hierarchy
The <administrativearea> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example

```xml
<addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>Emerald City</locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```

4.3.12.4 <contactnumber>
A <contactnumber> element contains the contact number of a person or organization, such as a telephone number.

Specialization hierarchy
The <contactnumber> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

```xml
<personinfo>  
  <namedetails><personname>
  </addressdetails>
  <contactnumbers>
    <contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber>
  </contactnumbers>
  <emailaddresses>
    <emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress>
  </emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```
4.3.12.5 <contactnumbers>
The <contactnumbers> element contains a list of contact numbers.

Specialization hierarchy
The <contactnumbers> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

4.3.12.6 <country>
The <country> element contains the name of a country.

Specialization hierarchy
The <country> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).
4.3.12.7 <emailaddress>
The <emailaddress> element contains an e-mail address.

Specialization hierarchy
The <emailaddress> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example
```
<personinfo>
  <namedetails><personname>
    <firstname>Derek</firstname>
    <middleinitial>L.</middleinitial>
    <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
    <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
    <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
  </personname>
  <addressdetails>
    <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
    <locality>Emerald City</locality>
    <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
    <country>USA</country>
  </addressdetails>
  <contactnumbers>
    <contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber>
  </contactnumbers>
  <emailaddresses>
    <emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress>
  </emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

4.3.12.8 <emailaddresses>
The <emailaddresses> element contains a list of e-mail addresses.

Specialization hierarchy
The <emailaddresses> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example
```
<personinfo>
  <namedetails><personname>
```

4.3.12.9 <firstname>
The <firstname> element contains the person's first name.

Comment by robander on 24 May 2021
Question about all of these ... should it be “the person” or “a person”? "The person" only seems to make sense if we are already talking about a person, but the short description for this element does not have that context. It seems like when defining the element on its own, it should be "a person".
Disposition: Unassigned

Specialization hierarchy
The <firstname> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

<namedetails>
  <personname>
    <honorific>Dr.</honorific>
    <firstname>Derek</firstname>
    <middlename>L.</middlename>
    <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
    <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
    <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
  </personname>
</namedetails>

4.3.12.10 <generationidentifier>
The <generationidentifier> element contains information about the person's generation, such as: Jr, III, or VIII.

Specialization hierarchy
The <generationidentifier> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.
**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

**Example**

```xml
<namedetails><personname>
  <firstname>Derek</firstname>
  <middlename>L.</middlename>
  <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
  <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
  <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
</personname></namedetails>
```

### 4.3.12.11 <honorific>

The `<honorific>` element contains the person's title, such as Dr., Mr., or Ms.

**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<honorific>` element is specialized from `<data>`. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

**Example**

```xml
<namedetails><personname>
  <honorific>Dr.</honorific>
  <firstname>Derek</firstname>
  <middlename>L.</middlename>
  <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
  <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
  <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
</personname></namedetails>
```

### 4.3.12.12 <lastname>

The `<lastname>` element contains the person's last name.

**Specialization hierarchy**

The `<lastname>` element is specialized from `<data>`. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

**Attributes**

The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

**Example**

```xml
<namedetails><personname>
  <honorific>Dr.</honorific>
  <firstname>Derek</firstname>
  <middlename>L.</middlename>
  <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
</personname></namedetails>
```
4.3.12.13 <locality>
The <locality> element contains information about the city and postal or ZIP code.

Usage information
This element can contain the information directly, or by acting as a wrapper for <localityname> and <postalcode>.

Specialization hierarchy
The <locality> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example

```xml
<addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>
    <localityname>Emerald City</localityname>
    <postalcode>66780</postalcode>
  </locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```

4.3.12.14 <localityname>
The <localityname> element contains the name of the locality or city.

Specialization hierarchy
The <localityname> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example

```xml
<addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>
    <localityname>Emerald City</localityname>
    <postalcode>66780</postalcode>
  </locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```
4.3.12.15 <middlename>
The <middlename> element contains the person's middle name or initial.

Specialization hierarchy
The <middlename> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

```
<namedetails><personname>
 <honorific>Dr.</honorific>
 <firstname>Derek</firstname>
 <middlename>L.</middlename>
 <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
 <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
 <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
</personname></namedetails>
```

4.3.12.16 <namedetails>
The <namedetails> element contains information about the name of the author or the authoring organization.

Specialization hierarchy
The <namedetails> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

```
<personinfo>
 <namedetails><personname>
   <firstname>Derek</firstname>
   <middlename>L.</middlename>
   <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
   <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
   <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
 </personname></namedetails>
 <addressdetails>
   <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
   <locality>Emerald City</locality>
   <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
   <country>USA</country>
 </addressdetails>
 <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
 <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```
4.3.12.17 <organizationinfo>
The <organizationinfo> element contains detailed information about an authoring organization.

Specialization hierarchy
The <organizationinfo> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

```xml
<organizationinfo>
  <namedetails>
    <organizationnamedetails>
      <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
      <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
    </organizationnamedetails>
  </namedetails>
  <addressdetails>
    <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
    <locality>Emerald City</locality>
    <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
    <country>USA</country>
  </addressdetails>
  <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
  <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
  <urls><url>www.wizardworks.example.org</url></urls>
</organizationinfo>
```

4.3.12.18 <organizationname>
The <organizationname> element contains name information about the authoring organization.

Specialization hierarchy
The <organizationname> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example

```xml
<organizationinfo>
  <namedetails>
    <organizationnamedetails>
      <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
      <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
    </organizationnamedetails>
  </namedetails>
  <addressdetails>
    <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
    <locality>Emerald City</locality>
    <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
    <country>USA</country>
  </addressdetails>
  <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
  <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
</organizationinfo>
```
4.3.12.19 <organizationnamedetails>

The <organizationnamedetails> element contains information about the name of an authoring organization.

Specialization hierarchy

The <organizationnamedetails> element is specialized from <ph>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: universal attributes (185) and @keyref (196).

Example

```xml
<organizationinfo>
  <namedetails>
    <organizationnamedetails>
      <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
      <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
    </organizationnamedetails>
  </namedetails>
  <addressdetails>
    <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
    <locality>Emerald City</locality>
    <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
    <country>USA</country>
  </addressdetails>
  <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers>
  <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses>
  <urls><url>www.wizardworks.example.org</url></urls>
</organizationinfo>
```

4.3.12.20 <otherinfo>

The <otherinfo> element contains other name information about the author or authoring organization.

Specialization hierarchy

The <otherinfo> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes

The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

```xml
<organizationinfo>
  <namedetails>
    <organizationnamedetails>
      <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
      <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
    </organizationnamedetails>
  </namedetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
</organizationinfo>
```
4.3.12.21 <personinfo>
The <personinfo> element is a wrapper containing all relevant data about a person, including name, address, and contact information.

Specialization hierarchy
The <personinfo> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

```
<personinfo>
  <namedetails>
    <personname>
      <firstname>Derek</firstname>
      <middlename>L.</middlename>
      <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
      <generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier>
      <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo>
    </personname>
  </namedetails>
  <addressdetails>
    <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
    <locality>Emerald City</locality>
    <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
    <country>USA</country>
  </addressdetails>
  <contactnumbers>
    <contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber>
  </contactnumbers>
  <emailaddresses>
    <emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress>
  </emailaddresses>
</personinfo>
```

4.3.12.22 <personname>
The <personname> element contains name information about the author.

Specialization hierarchy
The <personname> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

Attributes
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

Example

```
<personinfo>
  <namedetails>
    <personname>
      <firstname>Derek</firstname>
      <middlename>L.</middlename>
      <lastname>Singleton</lastname>
    </personname>
  </namedetails>
</personinfo>
```
<generationidentifier>Jr.</generationidentifier> <otherinfo>noted psychologist</otherinfo> </personname> </namedetails> <addressdetails> <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare> <locality>Emerald City</locality> <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea> <country>USA</country> </addressdetails> <contactnumbers><contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber></contactnumbers> <emailaddresses><emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress></emailaddresses> </personinfo>

### 4.3.12.23 <postalcode>
The `<postalcode>` element contains information about the postal code or the ZIP code.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The `<postalcode>` element is specialized from `<ph>`. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: `universal attributes` (185) and `@keyref` (196).

**Example**

```xml
<addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>
    <localityname>Emerald City</localityname>
    <postalcode>66780</postalcode>
  </locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
  <country>USA</country>
</addressdetails>
```

### 4.3.12.24 <thoroughfare>
The `<thoroughfare>` element contains information about the thoroughfare - for example, the street, avenue, or boulevard - on which an address is located.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The `<thoroughfare>` element is specialized from `<ph>`. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: `universal attributes` (185) and `@keyref` (196).

**Example**

```xml
<addressdetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
  <locality>
    <localityname>Emerald City</localityname>
    <postalcode>66780</postalcode>
  </locality>
  <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
</addressdetails>
```
4.3.12.25 <url>
The <url> element contains a Uniform Resource Locator (URL), such as a person's or company's internet address.

**Specialization hierarchy**
The <url> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

**Example**

```xml
<organizationinfo>
  <namedetails>
    <organizationnamedetails>
      <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
      <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
    </organizationnamedetails>
  </namedetails>
  <addressdetails>
    <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
    <locality>Emerald City</locality>
    <administrativearea>Kansas</administrativearea>
    <country>USA</country>
  </addressdetails>
  <contactnumbers>
    <contactnumber>123-555-4678</contactnumber>
  </contactnumbers>
  <emailaddresses>
    <emailaddress>wizard@example.org</emailaddress>
  </emailaddresses>
  <urls>
    <url>www.wizardworks.example.org</url>
  </urls>
</organizationinfo>
```

4.3.12.26 <urls>
The <urls> element contains a list of Uniform Resource Locators (URLs).

**Specialization hierarchy**
The <urls> element is specialized from <data>. It is defined in the XNAL domain module.

**Attributes**
The following attributes are available on this element: data-element attributes (191), link-relationship attributes (191), and universal attributes (185).

**Example**

```xml
<organizationinfo>
  <namedetails>
    <organizationnamedetails>
      <organizationname>WizardWorks, Inc.</organizationname>
      <otherinfo>'Best wizard in Oz'</otherinfo>
    </organizationnamedetails>
  </namedetails>
  <thoroughfare>123 Yellow Brick Road</thoroughfare>
</organizationinfo>
```
5 Conformance

Comment by BobThomas
Conformance statements to technical content will go in this topic.
Disposition: Unassigned
A Acknowledgments

Many members of the OASIS DITA Technical Committee participated in the creation of this specification and are gratefully acknowledged.

Robert D. Anderson, Oracle
Deb Bissantz, Vasont Systems
Carsten Brennecke, SAP SE
Bill Burns, HP Inc.
Kristen James Eberlein, Eberlein Consulting LLC
Nancy Harrison, Individual member
Alan Houser, Individual member
Scott Hudson, ServiceNow
Eliot Kimber, ServiceNow
Zoe Lawson, Synopsys, Inc.
Chris Nitchie, Individual member
Eric Sirois, IXIASOFT
Keith Schengili-Roberts, Individual member
Dawn Stevens, Comtech Services, Inc.
Bob Thomas, Individual member
Frank Wegmann, Individual member
# B Aggregated RFC-2119 statements

This appendix contains all the normative statements from the DITA for Technical Content 2.0 specification. They are aggregated here for convenience in this non-normative appendix.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Conformance statement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>001 (75)</td>
<td>The following rules determine how to render an <code>&lt;abbreviated-form&gt;</code> element. As described, the definition of &quot;introductory context&quot; will vary based on the rendered format and processor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. If the referenced topic is not a <code>&lt;glossentry&gt;</code> topic (or a specialization of <code>&lt;glossentry&gt;</code>), the title of the topic <strong>SHOULD</strong> be displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Otherwise, if <code>&lt;abbreviated-form&gt;</code> is located in an introductory context, and the referenced topic contains a non-empty <code>&lt;glossSurfaceForm&gt;</code> element, processors <strong>SHOULD</strong> render the contents of the <code>&lt;glossSurfaceForm&gt;</code> element from the referenced <code>&lt;glossentry&gt;</code> topic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Otherwise, if <code>&lt;abbreviated-form&gt;</code> is located in an introductory context, processors <strong>SHOULD</strong> render the contents of the <code>&lt;glossterm&gt;</code> element from the referenced <code>&lt;glossentry&gt;</code> topic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Otherwise (in non-introductory contexts), if the referenced <code>&lt;glossentry&gt;</code> topic contains a non-empty <code>&lt;glossAcronym&gt;</code> element, processors <strong>SHOULD</strong> render the abbreviated form of the term by displaying the contents of the <code>&lt;glossAcronym&gt;</code> element from the referenced <code>&lt;glossentry&gt;</code> topic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. Otherwise, processors <strong>SHOULD</strong> render the contents of the <code>&lt;glossterm&gt;</code> element from the referenced <code>&lt;glossentry&gt;</code> topic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>002 (96)</td>
<td>Processors which render the content of <code>&lt;stepsection&gt;</code> elements among the <code>&lt;step&gt;</code> elements <strong>MUST NOT</strong> number the <code>&lt;stepsection&gt;</code> elements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>003 (115)</td>
<td>When the <code>&lt;equation-number&gt;</code> element has empty or whitespace-only content, the equation number <strong>SHOULD</strong> be generated. When the <code>&lt;equation-number&gt;</code> element has non-whitespace-only content the content <strong>SHOULD</strong> be used as the equation number. For explicit numbers the content of the element <strong>SHOULD</strong> be the number value without any surrounding punctuation, for example, “3.2a” rather than “(3.2a)”. Processors <strong>SHOULD</strong> add punctuation or decoration to the number as appropriate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>004 (119)</td>
<td>Processors <strong>SHOULD</strong> process the MathML as though the <code>&lt;m:math&gt;</code> element had occurred directly in the content of the containing <code>&lt;mathml&gt;</code> element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>005 (121)</td>
<td>Processors <strong>SHOULD</strong> preserve line the breaks and spaces that are present in the content of a <code>&lt;codeblock&gt;</code> element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>006 (130)</td>
<td>Processors <strong>SHOULD</strong> preserve the line breaks and spaces that are present in the content of a <code>&lt;msgblock&gt;</code> element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007 (135)</td>
<td>Processors <strong>SHOULD</strong> process the SVG as though the <code>&lt;svg&gt;</code> element had occurred directly in the content of the containing <code>&lt;svg-container&gt;</code> element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008 (150)</td>
<td>Processors <strong>SHOULD</strong> preserve the line breaks and spaces that are present in the content of a <code>&lt;screen&gt;</code> element.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
C Attributes

This section contains definitions for commonly-used attributes. If an attribute is defined differently on a specific element, that information is covered in the topic for the specific element.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 29 December 2021
Add a brief overview of the fact that some specific attributes are overloaded – and have different meanings depending on what element they are specified upon.

Disposition: Unassigned

C.1 Attribute groups

Many of the attributes used on DITA elements are defined in attribute groups. These attribute groups are used both in the grammar files and the specification.

Architectural attributes

This group contains a set of attributes that are defined for document-level elements such as `<topic>` and `<map>`.

@DITAArchVersion (architectural attributes)

Specifies the version of the DITA architecture that is in use. This attribute is in the namespace http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/. This attribute is specified in the topic and map modules, and it uses a default value of the current version of DITA. The current default is "2.0".

@specializations (architectural attributes)

Specifies the attribute-domain specializations that are included in the document-type shell. This attribute is set as a default within the document-type shell. The value varies depending on what domains are integrated into the document-type shell. For example, a grammar file that includes the specialized attributes @audience, @deliveryTarget, and @newBaseAtt would set the value to @props/audience @props/deliveryTarget @base/newBaseAtt.

@xmlns:ditaarch (architectural attributes)

Declares the default DITA namespace. This namespace is declared as such in the RNG modules for `<topic>` and `<map>`, but it is specified as an attribute in the equivalent DTD-based modules. The value is fixed to "http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/".

Common map attributes

This group contains attributes that are frequently used on map elements.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 28 September 2022
I've added draft comments to the attribute definitions in this section that explain how the attribute is defined in the "DITA map attributes" topic.

Disposition: Unassigned

@cascade (common map attributes)

Specifies how metadata attributes cascade within a map. The specification defines the following values:
merge
Indicates that the metadata attributes cascade, and that the values of the metadata attributes are additive. This is the processing default for the @cascade attribute.

nomerge
Indicates that the metadata attributes cascade, but that they are not additive for <topicref> elements that specify a different value for a specific metadata attribute. If the cascading value for an attribute is already merged based on multiple ancestor elements, that merged value continues to cascade until a new value is encountered. That is, setting cascade="nomerge" does not undo merging that took place on ancestor elements.

Processors can also define custom, implementation-specific tokens for this attribute.

See Cascading of metadata attributes in a DITA map for more information about how this attribute interacts with metadata attributes.

@chunk (common map attributes)
Specifies how a processor should render a map or branch of a map. For example, it can be used to specify that individual topic documents should be rendered as a single document, or that a single document with multiple topics should be rendered as multiple documents.

The following values are valid:

**combine**
Instructs a processor to combine the referenced source documents for rendering purposes. This is intended for cases where a publishing process normally results in a single output artifact for each source XML document.

**split**
Instructs a processor to split each topic from the referenced source document into its own document for rendering purposes. This is intended for cases where a publishing process normally results in a single output artifact for each source XML document, regardless of how many DITA topics exist within each source document.

Processors can also define custom, implementation-specific tokens for this attribute.

For a detailed description of the @chunk attribute and its usage, see Chunking.

@collection-type (common map attributes)
Specifies how topics or links relate to each other. The processing default is "unordered", although no default is specified in the OASIS-provided grammar files. The following values are valid:

**unordered**
Indicates that the order of the child topics is not significant.

**sequence**
Indicates that the order of the child topics is significant. Output processors will typically link between them in order.

**choice**
Indicates that one of the children should be selected.

**family**
Indicates a tight grouping in which each of the referenced topics not only relates to the current topic but also relate to each other.
@collection-type
The @collection-type attribute specifies how the children of a <topicref> element relate to their parent and to each other. This attribute, which is set on the parent element, typically is used by processors to determine how to generate navigation links in the rendered topics. For example, a @collection-type value of "sequence" indicates that children of the specifying <topicref> element represent an ordered sequence of topics; processors might add numbers to the list of child topics or generate next/previous links for online presentation. This attribute is available in topics on the <linklist> and <linkpool> elements, where it has the same behavior. Where the @collection-type attribute is available on elements that cannot directly contain elements, the behavior of the attribute is undefined.

Disposition: Unassigned

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 28 September 2022
In the definitions of the supported values, do we want to refer to "resources" instead of "topics"? Since we specify that @collection-type specifies "how topics or links relate to each other" ...

Disposition: Unassigned

@keyscope (common map attributes)
Specifies that the element marks the boundaries of a key scope.
See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for information on using this attribute.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 28 September 2022
Here is the content from the "DITA map attributes" topic:

@keyscope
Defines a new scope for key definition and resolution, and gives the scope one or more names. For more information about key scopes, see Indirect key-based addressing.

Disposition: Unassigned

@linking (common map attributes)
Specifies linking characteristics of a topic specific to the location of this reference in a map. If the value is not specified locally, the value might cascade from another element in the map (for cascade rules, see Cascading of metadata attributes in a DITA map).

Comment by robander on Dec 28 2021
The text below matches 1.3 spec text but I'm nervous about "cannot link" type definition. It's describing how to generate links based on the current context in the map - it's not describing what the topic itself is allowed to link to, which is how I interpret "can".

Disposition: Unassigned

The following values are valid:

targetonly
A topic can only be linked to and cannot link to other topics.

sourceonly
A topic cannot be linked to but can link to other topics.
A topic can be linked to and can link to other topics. Use this to override the linking value of a parent topic.

A topic cannot be linked to or link to other topics.

See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

By default, the relationships between the topics that are referenced in a map are reciprocal:

- Child topics link to parent topics and vice versa.
- Next and previous topics in a sequence link to each other.
- Topics in a family link to their sibling topics.
- Topics referenced in the table cells of the same row in a relationship table link to each other. A topic referenced within a table cell does not (by default) link to other topics referenced in the same table cell.

This behavior can be modified by using the @linking attribute, which enables an author or information architect to specify how a topic participates in a relationship. The following values are valid:

- **linking="none"**
  Specifies that the topic does not exist in the map for the purposes of calculating links.

- **linking="sourceonly"**
  Specifies that the topic will link to its related topics but not vice versa.

- **linking="targetonly"**
  Specifies that the related topics will link to it but not vice versa.

- **linking="normal"**
  Default value. It specifies that linking will be reciprocal (the topic will link to related topics, and they will link back to it).

Authors also can create links directly in a topic by using the <xref> or <link> elements, but in most cases map-based linking is preferable, because links in topics create dependencies between topics that can hinder reuse.

Note that while the relationships between the topics that are referenced in a map are reciprocal, the relationships merely *imply* reciprocal links in generated output that includes links. The rendered navigation links are a function of the presentation style that is determined by the processor.

Specifies whether the referenced resource is processed normally or treated as a resource that is only included in order to resolve references, such as key or content references. The following values are valid:
normal
Indicates that the resource is a readable part of the information set. It is included in navigation and search results. This is the default value for the <topicref> element.

resource-only
Indicates that the resource should be used only for processing purposes. It is not included in navigation or search results, nor is it rendered as a topic. This is the default value for the <keydef> element.

dita-use-conref-target
See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

If no value is specified but the attribute is specified on a containing element within a map or within the related-links section, the value cascades from the closest containing element.

@search (common map attributes)
Specifies whether the target is available for searching. If the value is not specified locally, the value might cascade from another element in the map (for cascade rules, see Cascading of metadata attributes in a DITA map). The following values are valid: "yes", "no", and "-dita-use-conref-target".

@subjectrefs (common map attributes)
Specifies one or more keys that are each defined by a subject definition in a subject scheme map. Multiple values are separated by white space.

@toc (common map attributes)
Specifies whether a topic appears in the table of contents (TOC) based on the current map context. If the value is not specified locally, the value might cascade from another element in the map (for cascade rules, see Cascading of metadata attributes in a DITA map). The following values are valid:

yes
The topic appears in a generated TOC.

no
The topic does not appear in a generated TOC.

dita-use-conref-target
See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for more information.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 28 September 2022
Here is the content from the "DITA map attributes" topic:

@search
Specifies whether the topic is included in search indexes.

Disposition: Unassigned
Complex table attributes

This group includes attributes that are defined on complex table elements. Unless otherwise noted, these attributes are part of the OASIS Exchange Table Model. Complex table elements typically use only a subset of the attributes that are defined in this group.

@align (complex table attributes)

Specifies the horizontal alignment of text in table entries. The following values are valid:

- left
  Indicates left alignment of the text.

- right
  Indicates right alignment of the text.

- center
  Indicates center alignment of the text.

- justify
  Justifies the contents to both the left and the right.

- char
  Indicates character alignment. The text is aligned with the first occurrence of the character specified by the @char attribute.

@dita-use-conref-target

See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

The @align attribute is available on the following table elements: <colspec>, <entry>, and <tgroup>.

@char (complex table attributes)

Specifies the alignment character, which is the character that is used for aligning the text in table entries. This attribute applies when align="char". A value of "" (the null string) means there is no aligning character.

For example, if align="char" and char="." are specified, then text in the table entry aligns with the first occurrence of the period within the entry. This might be useful if decimal alignment is required.

The @char attribute is available on the following table elements: <colspec> and <entry>.

@charoff (complex table attributes)

Specifies the horizontal offset of the alignment character that is specified by the @char attribute. The value is a greater-than-zero number that is less than or equal to 100. It represents the percentage of the current column width by which the text is offset to the left of the alignment character.

For example, if align="char", char=".", and charoff="50" are all specified, then text in the table entry is aligned 50% of the distance to the left of the first occurrence of the period character within the table entry.

The @charoff attribute is available on the following table elements: <colspec> and <entry>.

@colsep (complex table attributes)

Specifies whether to render column separators between table entries. The following values are valid: "0" (no separators) and "1" (separators).

The @colsep attribute is available on the following table elements: <colspec>, <entry>, <table>, and <tgroup>. 
@rowheader (complex table attributes)
  Specifies whether the entries in the respective column are row headers. The following values are valid:

  firstcol
    Indicates that entries in the first column of the table are row headers. This applies when the @rowheader attribute is specified on the <table> element.

  headers
    Indicates that entries of the column that is described using the <colspec> element are row headers. This applies when the @rowheader attribute is specified on the <colspec> element.

  norowheader
    Indicates that entries in the first column are not row headers. This applies when the @rowheader attribute is specified on the <table> element.

-dita-use-conref-target
  See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

Note  This attribute is not part of the OASIS Exchange Table Model upon which DITA tables are based. Some processors or output formats might not support all values.

The @rowheader attribute is available on the following table elements: <table> and <colspec>.

@rowsep (complex table attributes)
  Specifies whether to render row separators between table entries. The following values are valid: "0" (no separators) and "1" (separators).

The @rowsep attribute is available on the following table elements: <colspec>, <entry>, <row>, <table>, and <tgroup>.

@valign (complex table attributes)
  Specifies the vertical alignment of text in table entries. The following values are valid:

  bottom
    Indicates that text is aligned with the bottom of the table entry.

  middle
    Indicates that text is aligned with the middle of the table entry.

  top
    Indicates that text is aligned with the top of the table entry.

-dita-use-conref-target
  See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

The @valign attribute is available on the following table elements: <entry>, <tbody>, <thead>, and <row>.

Data-element attributes

This group contains attributes that are defined on the <data> element and its specializations.

@datatype (data-element attributes)
  Specifies the type of data contained in the @value attribute or within the <data> element. A typical use of @datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.

@name (data-element attributes)
  Defines a unique name for the object.
Do we need to specify the scope of “unique” here?

Disposition: Unassigned

@value (data-element attributes)
Specifies a value associated with the current property or element.

Date attributes
This group contains attributes that take date values. They are defined on metadata elements that work with date information:

@expiry (date attributes)
Specifies the date when the information should be retired or refreshed. The date is specified using the ISO 8601 format: YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month (01 to 12), and DD is the day (01-31).

@golive (date attributes)
Specifies the publication or general availability (GA) date. The date is specified using the ISO 8601 format: YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month (01 to 12), and DD is the day (01-31).

Display attributes
This group contains attributes that affect the rendering of many elements.

@expanse (display attributes)
Specifies the horizontal placement of the element. The following values are valid:

  column
  Indicates that the element is aligned with the current column margin.

  page
  Indicates that the element is placed on the left page margin for left-to-right presentation or the right page margin for right-to-left presentation.

  spread
  Indicates that the object is rendered across a multi-page spread. If the output format does not have anything that corresponds to spreads, then “spread” has the same meaning as “page”.

  textline
  Indicates that the element is aligned with the left (for left-to-right presentation) or right (for right-to-left presentation) margin of the current text line and takes indentation into account.

@dita-use-conref-target
See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

For <table>, in place of the @expanse attribute that is used by other DITA elements, the @pgwide attribute is used in order to conform to the OASIS Exchange Table Model.

Some processors or output formats might not support all values.

@frame (display attributes)
Specifies which portion of a border surrounds the element. The following values are valid:

  all
  Indicates that a line is rendered at the top, bottom, left, and right of the containing element.

  bottom
  Indicates that a line is rendered at the bottom of the containing element.
none
Indicates that no lines are rendered.
sides
Indicates that a line is rendered at the left and right of the containing element.
top
Indicates that a line is rendered at the top of the containing element.
topbot
Indicates that a line is rendered at the top and bottom of the containing element.

-dita-use-conref-target
See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

Some processors or output formats might not support all values.

@scale (display attributes)
Specifies the percentage by which fonts are resized in relation to the normal text size. The value of this attribute is a positive integer. When used on `<table>` or `<simpletable>`, the following values are valid: "50", "60", "70", "80", "90", "100", "110", "120", "140", "160", "180", "200", and -dita-use-conref-target (202).
This attribute is primarily useful for print-oriented display. Some processors might not support all values.
If the `@scale` attribute is specified on an element that contains an image, the image is not scaled. The image is scaled only if a scaling property is explicitly specified for the `<image>` element.

ID and conref attributes
This group contains the attributes that enable the naming and referencing of elements.

@conaction
Specifies how the element content will be pushed into a new location. The following values are valid:
mark
The element acts as a marker when pushing content before or after the target, to help ensure that the push action is valid. The element with conaction="mark" also specifies the target of the push action with @conref. Content inside of the element with conaction="mark" is not pushed to the new location.
pushafter
Content from this element is pushed after the location specified by @conref on the element with conaction="mark". The element with conaction="pushafter" is the first sibling element after the element with conaction="mark".
pushbefore
Content from this element is pushed before the location specified by @conref on the element with conaction="mark". The element with conaction="pushbefore" is the first sibling element before the element with conaction="mark".
pushreplace
Content from this element replaces any content from the element referenced by the @conref attribute. A second element with conaction="mark" is not used when using conaction="pushreplace".

-dita-use-conref-target
See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.
See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for examples and details about the syntax.

@conkeyref
Specifies a key name or a key name with an element ID that acts as an indirect reference to reusable content. The referenced content is used in place of the content of the current element. See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for more details about the syntax and behaviors.

@conref
Specifies a URI that references a DITA element. The referenced content is used in place of the content of the current element. See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for examples and details about the syntax.

@conrefend
Specifies a URI that references the last element in a sequence of elements, with the first element of the sequence specified by @conref. The referenced sequence of elements is used in place of the content of the current element. See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for examples and details about the syntax.

@id
Specifies an identifier for the current element. This ID is the target for references by @href and @conref attributes and for external applications that refer to DITA or LwDITA content. This attribute is defined with the XML data type NMTOKEN, except where noted for specific elements within the language reference.

See id attribute for more details.

Inclusion attributes
This group includes attributes defined on <include> and its specializations:

@encoding (inclusion attributes)

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 28 September 2002
What is specialized from &lt;include&gt;? Both base (if any) and technical content ...

Disposition: Unassigned

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 29 April 2019
Can we replace "should" in the following definition?

Disposition: Unassigned

Specifies the character encoding to use when translating the character data from the referenced content. The value should be a valid encoding name. If not specified, processors may make attempts to automatically determine the correct encoding, for example using HTTP headers, through analysis of the binary structure of the referenced data, or the &lt;?xml?&gt; processing instruction when including XML as text. The resource should be treated as UTF-8 if no other encoding information can be determined.

When parse="xml", standard XML parsing rules apply for the detection of character encoding. The necessity and uses of @encoding for non-standard values of @parse are implementation-dependent.

@parse (inclusion attributes)

Specifies the processing expectations for the referenced resource. Processors must support the following values:
The contents should be treated as plain text. Reserved XML characters should be displayed, and not interpreted as XML markup.

The contents of the referenced resource should be treated as an XML document, and the referenced element should be inserted at the location of the `<include>` element. If a fragment identifier is included in the address of the content, processors must select the element with the specified ID. If no fragment identifier is included, the root element of the referenced XML document is selected. Any grammar processing should be performed during resolution, such that default attribute values are explicitly populated. Prolog content must be discarded.

It is an error to use `parse="xml"` anywhere other than within `<foreign>` or a specialization thereof.

Processors may support other values for the `@parse` attribute with proprietary processing semantics. Processors should issue warnings and use `<fallback>` when they encounter unsupported `@parse` values. Non-standard `@parse` instructions should be expressed as URIs.

**Note** Proprietary `@parse` values will likely limit the portability and interoperability of DITA content, so should be used with care.

### Link relationship attributes

This group contains attributes whose values can be used for representing navigational relationships.

**@format (link-relationship attributes)**

Specifies the format of the resource that is referenced. See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.

**@href (link-relationship attributes)**

Specifies a reference to a resource. See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.

**@scope (link-relationship attributes)**

Specifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the referenced resource. The following values are valid: "local", "peer", "external", and "-dita-use-conref-target".

See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.

**@type (link-relationship attributes)**

Describes the target of a reference. See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.

### Localization attributes

This group contains the attributes that are related to translation and localization.

---

**Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 29 September 2022**

The definition of the localizations attribute matches how they are described in the architectural topics. Wherever possible, the definition is reused. Where it is not reused (because the definition in the archSpec topics is in a shortdesc), I've checked to ensure that wording is identical.

**Disposition: Unassigned**

This group contains the attributes that are related to translation and localization.
@dir
Identifies or overrides the text directionality. The following values are valid:

lro
Indicates an override of the Unicode Bidirectional Algorithm, forcing the element into left-to-right mode.

ltr
Indicates left-to-right.

rlo
Indicates an override of the Unicode Bidirectional Algorithm, forcing the element into right-to-left mode.

rtl
Indicates right-to-left.

@dita-use-conref-target
See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

See The dir attribute for more information.

@translate
Specifies whether the content of the element should be translated. The following values are valid: "yes", "no", and "-dita-use-conref-target".

See Element-by-element recommendations for translators for suggested processing defaults for each element.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 31 December 2021
Does Element-by-element recommendations for translators really provide suggested processing defaults for each element? I thought it covered whether an element was block or in-line and whether there were considerations that translators needed to be aware of.

Disposition: Unassigned

@xml:lang
Specifies the language and optional locale of the content that is contained in an element. Valid values are language tokens or the null string. The @xml:lang attribute and its values are described in the Extensible Markup Language 1.0 specification, fifth edition.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 29 September 2022
Do we also want to direct readers to the architectural topics about the @xml:lang attribute?

Disposition: Unassigned

Metadata attributes
This group contains common metadata attributes: @base, @importance, @props, @rev, and @status. The @base and @props attributes can be specialized.

@base
Specifies metadata about the element. It is often used as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple syntax for values, but which are not conditional processing attributes.
The `@base` attribute takes a space-delimited set of values. However, when serving as a container for generalized attributes, the attribute values will be more complex. See [Attribute generalization](#) for more details.

**@importance**
Specifies the importance or priority that is assigned to an element. The following values are valid: "default", "deprecated", "high", "low", "normal", "obsolete", "optional", "recommended", "required", "urgent", and "-dita-use-conref-target". This attribute is not used for conditional processing, although applications might use the value of the `@importance` attribute to highlight elements. For example, in steps of a task topic, the value of the `@importance` attribute indicates whether a step is optional or required.

**Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 29 September 2022**
I think the phrase “to highlight elements” is a little off. Maybe "render generated text"? And how about adding "Processors often add text or images to ensure that readers of the generated content understand whether the step is optional or required." to the end of the example?

**Disposition: Unassigned**

**@props**
Specifies metadata about the element. New attributes can be specialized from the `@props` attribute. This attribute supports conditional processing. If no value is specified but the attribute is specified on a containing element within a map or within the related-links section, the value cascades from the closest containing element.

The `@props` attribute takes a space-delimited set of values. However, when serving as a container for generalized attributes, the attribute values will be more complex. See [Attribute generalization](#) for more details.

**@rev**
Specifies a revision level of an element that identifies when the element was added or modified. It can be used to flag outputs when it matches a run-time parameter. It cannot be used for filtering nor is it sufficient to be used for version control. If no value is specified but the attribute is specified on a containing element within a map or within the related-links section, the value cascades from the closest containing element.

**Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 29 September 2022**
I want to tweak this. How about the following? Also, neither definition describes what values are permitted.

**Disposition: Unassigned**

**@status**
Specifies the modification status of the element. The following values are valid: "new", "changed", "deleted", "unchanged", and "-dita-use-conref-target".
Simple table attributes

This group includes attributes that are defined only on the `<simpletable>` element: `@keycol` and `@relcolwidth`. These attributes are listed in a group because the `<simpletable>` element is frequently used as a specialization base.

@keycol (simpletable attributes)
   Specifies the column that contains the content that represents the key to the tabular structure. If `@keycol` is present and assigned a numerical value, the specified column is treated as a vertical header.

@relcolwidth (simpletable attributes)
   Specifies the width of each column in relationship to the width of the other columns. The value is a space-separated list of relative column widths. Each column width is specified as a positive integer or decimal number followed by an asterisk character.

   For example, the value `relcolwidth="1* 2* 3*"` gives a total of 6 units across three columns.
   The relative widths are 1/6, 2/6, and 3/6 (16.7%, 33.3%, and 50%). Similarly, the value `relcolwidth="90* 150*"` causes relative widths of 90/240 and 150/240 (37.5% and 62.5%).

Universal attributes

This group defines a set of attributes that are available on almost all DITA elements. It includes all elements in the ID, localization, and metadata attribute groups, as well as the following attributes:

@class (not for use by authors)
   This attribute is not for use by authors. If an editor displays `@class` attribute values, do not edit them. Specifies a default value that defines the specialization ancestry of the element. Its predefined values allow DITA tools to work correctly with specialized elements. In a generalized DITA document the `@class` attribute value in the generalized instance might differ from the default value for the `@class` attribute for the element as given in the DTD or schema. See The class attribute rules and syntax for more information. This attribute is specified on every element except for the `<dita>` container element. It is always specified with a default value, which varies for each element.

@outputclass
   Specifies a role that the element is playing. The role must be consistent with the basic semantic and expectations for the element. In particular, the `@outputclass` attribute can be used for styling during output processing; HTML output will typically preserve `@outputclass` for CSS processing.

Comment by robander
   I don't like "The role must be consistent...", that seems like best practice that cannot be normative – and I could easily say outputclass="flashy" which makes my element show up with sparkles, and has nothing to do with "the basic semantic and expectations for the element".
   Disposition: Unassigned

C.2 Universal attribute group

The universal attribute group defines a set of common attributes that are available on almost every DITA element. The universal attribute group includes all attributes from the ID, localization, and metadata attribute groups, plus the `@class` and `@outputclass` attributes.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 29 December 2021
   This is something wrong with the organizational structure of this topic ... Look at it in outline form, and check that the sections, titles, and content all make logical sense with the topic title of "Universal attribute group".
Common attribute groups

The following attribute groups are referenced in this specification. They are also used in the grammar files when the element attributes are defined.

Universal attributes

Includes @class and @outputclass, along with every attribute in the ID, localization, and metadata attribute groups.

ID attributes

This group includes the attributes that enable the naming and referencing of elements: @conaction, @conkeyref, @conref, @conrefend, and @id.

Localization attributes

This group includes attributes that are related to translation and localization: @dir, @translate, and @xml:lang.

Metadata attributes

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 31 December 2021

Why do we need to mention that two attributes are available for specialization here? I think it makes the paragraph hard to read.

Disposition: Unassigned

This group includes common metadata attributes, two of which are available for specialization: @base, @importance, @props, @rev, and @status.

The base DITA vocabulary from OASIS includes several specializations of @props: @audience, @deliveryTarget, @otherprops, @platform, and @product. These attributes are defined as attribute-extension domains. By default, they are integrated into all OASIS-provided document-type shells, but they can be made unavailable by implementing custom document-type shells.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 29 December 2021

Why do we provide information about specialization and custom document-type shells here? I think that information could be removed.

Disposition: Unassigned

Universal attribute definitions

The universal attributes for OASIS DITA elements are defined below. Specialized attributes, which are part of the OASIS distribution but are only available when explicitly included in a shell, are noted in the list.

@audience (specialized attribute)

Indicates the intended audience for the element. If no value is specified but the attribute is specified on a containing element within a map or within the related-links section, the value cascades from the closest containing element.

@base

Specifies metadata about the element. It is often used as a base for specialized attributes that have a simple syntax for values, but which are not conditional processing attributes.
The @base attribute takes a space-delimited set of values. However, when serving as a container for generalized attributes, the attribute values will be more complex. See Attribute generalization for more details.

@class (not for use by authors)
This attribute is not for use by authors. If an editor displays @class attribute values, do not edit them. Specifies a default value that defines the specialization ancestry of the element. Its predefined values allow DITA tools to work correctly with specialized elements. In a generalized DITA document the @class attribute value in the generalized instance might differ from the default value for the @class attribute for the element as given in the DTD or schema. See The class attribute rules and syntax for more information. This attribute is specified on every element except for the <dita> container element. It is always specified with a default value, which varies for each element.

@conaction
Specifies how the element content will be pushed into a new location. The following values are valid:

- mark
  The element acts as a marker when pushing content before or after the target, to help ensure that the push action is valid. The element with conaction="mark" also specifies the target of the push action with @conref. Content inside of the element with conaction="mark" is not pushed to the new location.

- pushafter
  Content from this element is pushed after the location specified by @conref on the element with conaction="mark". The element with conaction="pushafter" is the first sibling element after the element with conaction="mark".

- pushbefore
  Content from this element is pushed before the location specified by @conref on the element with conaction="mark". The element with conaction="pushbefore" is the first sibling element before the element with conaction="mark".

- pushreplace
  Content from this element replaces any content from the element referenced by the @conref attribute. A second element with conaction="mark" is not used when using conaction="pushreplace".

-dita-use-conref-target
See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for examples and details about the syntax.

@conkeyref
Specifies a key name or a key name with an element ID that acts as an indirect reference to reusable content. The referenced content is used in place of the content of the current element. See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for more details about the syntax and behaviors.

@conref
Specifies a URI that references a DITA element. The referenced content is used in place of the content of the current element. See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for examples and details about the syntax.

@conrefend
Specifies a URI that references the last element in a sequence of elements, with the first element of the sequence specified by @conref. The referenced sequence of elements is used in place of the content of the current element. See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for examples and details about the syntax.
@deliveryTarget (specialized attribute)
Specifies the intended delivery target of the content, for example, "html", "pdf", or "epub". If no value is specified but the attribute is specified on a containing element within a map or within the related-links section, the value cascades from the closest containing element.

@dir
Identifies or overrides the text directionality. The following values are valid:

- lro
  Indicates an override of the Unicode Bidirectional Algorithm, forcing the element into left-to-right mode.

- ltr
  Indicates left-to-right.

- rlo
  Indicates an override of the Unicode Bidirectional Algorithm, forcing the element into right-to-left mode.

- rtl
  Indicates right-to-left.

-dita-use-conref-target
See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

See The dir attribute for more information.

@id
Specifies an identifier for the current element. This ID is the target for references by @href and @conref attributes and for external applications that refer to DITA or LwDITA content. This attribute is defined with the XML data type NMTOKEN, except where noted for specific elements within the language reference.

See id attribute for more details.

@importance
Specifies the importance or priority that is assigned to an element. The following values are valid: "default", "deprecated", "high", "low", "normal", "obsolete", "optional", "recommended", "required", "urgent", and "-dita-use-conref-target". This attribute is not used for conditional processing, although applications might use the value of the @importance attribute to highlight elements. For example, in steps of a task topic, the value of the @importance attribute indicates whether a step is optional or required.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 29 September 2022
I think the phrase “to highlight elements” is a little off. Maybe “render generated text”? And how about adding "Processors often add text or images to ensure that readers of the generated content understand whether the step is optional or required." to the end of the example?

Disposition: Unassigned

@otherprops (specialized attribute)
Specifies a property or properties that provide selection criteria for the element. Alternatively, the @props attribute can be specialized to provide a new metadata attribute instead of using the general @otherprops attribute. If no value is specified but the attribute is specified on a containing element within a map or within the related-links section, the value cascades from the closest containing element.
@outputclass
Specifies a role that the element is playing. The role must be consistent with the basic semantic and expectations for the element. In particular, the @outputclass attribute can be used for styling during output processing; HTML output will typically preserve @outputclass for CSS processing.

Comment by robander
I don't like "The role must be consistent...", that seems like best practice that cannot be normative – and I could easily say outputclass="flashy" which makes my element show up with sparkles, and has nothing to do with "the basic semantic and expectations for the element".
Disposition: Unassigned

@platform (specialized attribute)
Indicates operating system and hardware. If no value is specified but the attribute is specified on a containing element within a map or within the related-links section, the value cascades from the closest containing element.

Comment by robander
I think this could specify a platform that is not an operating system or hardware, right? The current definition explicitly limits platform to those two … maybe “Specifies a platform or platforms to which the element applies, such as the operating system or hardware relevant to a task.”
Disposition: Unassigned

@product (specialized attribute)
Specifies the name of the product to which the element applies. If no value is specified but the attribute is specified on a containing element within a map or within the related-links section, the value cascades from the closest containing element.

@props
Specifies metadata about the element. New attributes can be specialized from the @props attribute. This attribute supports conditional processing. If no value is specified but the attribute is specified on a containing element within a map or within the related-links section, the value cascades from the closest containing element.

The @props attribute takes a space-delimited set of values. However, when serving as a container for generalized attributes, the attribute values will be more complex. See Attribute generalization for more details.

@rev
Specifies a revision level of an element that identifies when the element was added or modified. It can be used to flag outputs when it matches a run-time parameter. It cannot be used for filtering nor is it sufficient to be used for version control. If no value is specified but the attribute is specified on a containing element within a map or within the related-links section, the value cascades from the closest containing element.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 29 September 2022
I want to tweak this. How about the following? Also, neither definition describes what values are permitted.

Specifies metadata that identifies when the element was added or the content of the element was modified. The @rev attribute can be used for flagging. It cannot be used for filtering nor is it sufficient to be used for version control. If no value is specified but the attribute is specified on a containing element within a map or within the related-links section, the value cascades from the closest containing element.

Disposition: Unassigned
@status
Specifies the modification status of the element. The following values are valid: "new", "changed", "deleted", "unchanged", and "-dita-use-conref-target".

@translate
Specifies whether the content of the element should be translated. The following values are valid: "yes", "no", and "-dita-use-conref-target".

See Element-by-element recommendations for translators for suggested processing defaults for each element.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 31 December 2021
Does Element-by-element recommendations for translators really provide suggested processing defaults for each element? I thought it covered whether an element was block or in-line and whether there were considerations that translators needed to be aware of.

Disposition: Unassigned

@xml:lang
Specifies the language and optional locale of the content that is contained in an element. Valid values are language tokens or the null string. The @xml:lang attribute and its values are described in the Extensible Markup Language 1.0 specification, fifth edition.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 29 September 2022
Do we also want to direct readers to the architectural topics about the @xml:lang attribute?

Disposition: Unassigned

C.3 Common attributes
The common attributes topic collects defines most of the attributes that are used on more than one base element.

Common attribute groups
The following groups are referenced in this specification, and they are also used in grammar files when defining attributes for elements.

Architectural attributes
This group includes a set of attributes that are defined for document-level elements such as <topic> and <map>: @DITAArchVersion, @specializations, and @xmlns:ditaarch.

Common map attributes
This group includes attributes that are frequently used on map elements: @cascade, @chunk, @collection-type, @keyscope, @linking, @processing-role, @search, @toc, and @subjectrefs.

Complex table attributes
This group includes attributes that are defined on table elements but not simple table elements. These attributes are part of the OASIS Exchange Table Model, unless otherwise noted. Table elements generally use only a subset of the attributes that are defined in this group. This group contains the following attributes: @align, @char, @charoff, @colsep, @rowheader, @rowsep, and @valign.

Data-element attributes

Includes attributes defined on `<data>` and its many specializations: `@datatype`, `@name`, and `@value`

Date attributes

Includes attributes that take date values, and are defined on metadata elements that work with date information: `@expiry` and `@golive`

Display attributes

This group includes attributes that affect the rendering of many elements: `@expanse`, `@frame`, and `@scale`.

Inclusion attributes

Includes attributes defined on `<include>` and its specializations: `@encoding` and `@parse`.

Link-relationship attributes

This group includes attributes whose values can be used for representing navigational relationships: `@format`, `@href`, `@type`, and `@scope`.

Simple table attributes

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 29 December 2021

If I have jumped to this place in a document from the element-reference topic, I want the attributes listed here in the “Simple table group” to be hyperlinked to the actual definition.

Disposition: Unassigned

This group includes attributes that are defined only on the `<simpletable>` element: `@keycol` and `@relcolwidth`. These attributes are listed in a group because the `<simpletable>` element is frequently used as a specialization base.

Table accessibility attributes

This group contains attributes that are defined on the `<stentry>` element and its specializations: `@headers` (196) and `@scope` (as defined on `<stentry>`) (200).

Other attributes (not in a group)

These are attributes that are used in the same way on more than one base element, but they are not formally grouped together: `@compact`, `@duplicates`, `@otherrole`, `@role`, and `@title-role`.

Common attribute definitions

Common attributes, including those in the groups listed above, are defined as follows.

@align (complex table attributes)

Specifies the horizontal alignment of text in table entries. The following values are valid:

- **left**
  - Indicates left alignment of the text.

- **right**
  - Indicates right alignment of the text.

- **center**
  - Indicates center alignment of the text.

- **justify**
  - Justifies the contents to both the left and the right.
char
Indicates character alignment. The text is aligned with the first occurrence of the character specified by the @char attribute.

@dita-use-conref-target
See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

The @align attribute is available on the following table elements: <colspec>, <entry>, and <tgroup>.

@cascade (common map attributes)
Specifies how metadata attributes cascade within a map. The specification defines the following values:

merge
Indicates that the metadata attributes cascade, and that the values of the metadata attributes are additive. This is the processing default for the @cascade attribute.

nomerge
Indicates that the metadata attributes cascade, but that they are not additive for <topicref> elements that specify a different value for a specific metadata attribute. If the cascading value for an attribute is already merged based on multiple ancestor elements, that merged value continues to cascade until a new value is encountered. That is, setting cascade="nomerge" does not undo merging that took place on ancestor elements.

Processors can also define custom, implementation-specific tokens for this attribute.

See Cascading of metadata attributes in a DITA map for more information about how this attribute interacts with metadata attributes.

@char (complex table attributes)
Specifies the alignment character, which is the character that is used for aligning the text in table entries. This attribute applies when align="char". A value of "" (the null string) means there is no aligning character.

For example, if align="char" and char="." are specified, then text in the table entry aligns with the first occurrence of the period within the entry. This might be useful if decimal alignment is required.

The @char attribute is available on the following table elements: <colspec> and <entry>.

@charoff (complex table attributes)
Specifies the horizontal offset of the alignment character that is specified by the @char attribute. The value is a greater-than-zero number that is less than or equal to 100. It represents the percentage of the current column width by which the text is offset to the left of the alignment character.

For example, if align="char", char="." and charoff="50" are all specified, then text in the table entry is aligned 50% of the distance to the left of the first occurrence of the period character within the table entry.

The @charoff attribute is available on the following table elements: <colspec> and <entry>.

@chunk (common map attributes)
Specifies how a processor should render a map or branch of a map. For example, it can be used to specify that individual topic documents should be rendered as a single document, or that a single document with multiple topics should be rendered as multiple documents.

The following values are valid:
**combine**

Instructs a processor to combine the referenced source documents for rendering purposes. This is intended for cases where a publishing process normally results in a single output artifact for each source XML document.

**split**

Instructs a processor to split each topic from the referenced source document into its own document for rendering purposes. This is intended for cases where a publishing process normally results in a single output artifact for each source XML document, regardless of how many DITA topics exist within each source document.

Processors can also define custom, implementation-specific tokens for this attribute.

For a detailed description of the @chunk attribute and its usage, see Chunking.

**@collection-type (common map attributes)**

Specifies how topics or links relate to each other. The processing default is "unordered", although no default is specified in the OASIS-provided grammar files. The following values are valid:

**unordered**

Indicates that the order of the child topics is not significant.

**sequence**

Indicates that the order of the child topics is significant. Output processors will typically link between them in order.

**choice**

Indicates that one of the children should be selected.

**family**

Indicates a tight grouping in which each of the referenced topics not only relates to the current topic but also relate to each other.

---

**Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 28 September 2022**

Here is the content from the "DITA map attributes" topic:

**@collection-type**

The @collection-type attribute specifies how the children of a <topicref> element relate to their parent and to each other. This attribute, which is set on the parent element, typically is used by processors to determine how to generate navigation links in the rendered topics. For example, a @collection-type value of "sequence" indicates that children of the specifying <topicref> element represent an ordered sequence of topics; processors might add numbers to the list of child topics or generate next/previous links for online presentation. This attribute is available in topics on the <linklist> and <linkpool> elements, where it has the same behavior. Where the @collection-type attribute is available on elements that cannot directly contain elements, the behavior of the attribute is undefined.

Disposition: Unassigned

---

**Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 28 September 2022**

In the definitions of the supported values, do we want to refer to "resources" instead of "topics"? Since we specify that @collection-type specifies "how topics or links relate to each other" ...

Disposition: Unassigned
@colsep (complex table attributes)
  Specifies whether to render column separators between table entries. The following values are valid:
  "0" (no separators) and "1" (separators).
  The @colsep attribute is available on the following table elements: <colspec>, <entry>,
  <table>, and <tgroup>.

@compact
  Specifies whether the vertical spacing between list items is tightened. The following values are valid:
  "yes", "no", and "-dita-use-conref-target". Some DITA processors or output formats might not support
  the @compact attribute.

@datatype (data-element attributes)
  Specifies the type of data contained in the @value attribute or within the <data> element. A typical
  use of @datatype will be the identifying URI for an XML Schema datatype.

@DITAArchVersion (architectural attributes)
  Specifies the version of the DITA architecture that is in use. This attribute is in the namespace
  http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/. This attribute is specified in the topic
  and map modules, and it uses a default value of the current version of DITA. The current default is
  "2.0".

@duplicates
  Specifies whether duplicate links are removed from a group of links. Duplicate links are links that
  address the same resource using the same properties, such as link text and link role. How duplicate
  links are determined is processor-specific. The following values are valid:
  yes
    Specifies that duplicate links are retained.
  no
    Specifies that duplicate links are removed.
  -dita-use-conref-target
    See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.
  The suggested processing default is "yes" within <linklist> elements and "no" for other links.

@encoding (inclusion attributes)

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 29 April 2019
  Can we replace "should" in the following definition?

Disposition: Unassigned
  Specifies the character encoding to use when translating the character data from the referenced
  content. The value should be a valid encoding name. If not specified, processors may make attempts
  to automatically determine the correct encoding, for example using HTTP headers, through analysis
  of the binary structure of the referenced data, or the <?xml?> processing instruction when including
  XML as text. The resource should be treated as UTF-8 if no other encoding information can be
determined.
When parse="xml", standard XML parsing rules apply for the detection of character encoding. The necessity and uses of @encoding for non-standard values of @parse are implementation-dependent.

@expanse (display attributes)
Specifies the horizontal placement of the element. The following values are valid:

- column
  Indicates that the element is aligned with the current column margin.
- page
  Indicates that the element is placed on the left page margin for left-to-right presentation or the right page margin for right-to-left presentation.
- spread
  Indicates that the object is rendered across a multi-page spread. If the output format does not have anything that corresponds to spreads, then "spread" has the same meaning as "page".
- textline
  Indicates that the element is aligned with the left (for left-to-right presentation) or right (for right-to-left presentation) margin of the current text line and takes indentation into account.

@dita-use-conref-target
See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

For <table>, in place of the @expanse attribute that is used by other DITA elements, the @pgwide attribute is used in order to conform to the OASIS Exchange Table Model.

Some processors or output formats might not support all values.

@expiry (date attributes)
Specifies the date when the information should be retired or refreshed. The date is specified using the ISO 8601 format: YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month (01 to 12), and DD is the day (01-31).

@format (link-relationship attributes)
Specifies the format of the resource that is referenced. See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.

@frame (display attributes)
Specifies which portion of a border surrounds the element. The following values are valid:

- all
  Indicates that a line is rendered at the top, bottom, left, and right of the containing element.
- bottom
  Indicates that a line is rendered at the bottom of the containing element.
- none
  Indicates that no lines are rendered.
- sides
  Indicates that a line is rendered at the left and right of the containing element.
- top
  Indicates that a line is rendered at the top of the containing element.
- topbot
  Indicates that a line is rendered at the top and bottom of the containing element.

@dita-use-conref-target
See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.
Some processors or output formats might not support all values.

**@golve (date attributes)**
Specifies the publication or general availability (GA) date. The date is specified using the ISO 8601 format: YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY is the year, MM is the month (01 to 12), and DD is the day (01-31).

**@headers**
Specifies which entries in the current table provide headers for this cell. The @headers attribute contains an unordered set of unique, space-separated tokens, each of which is an ID reference of an entry from the same table.

**@href (link-relationship attributes)**
Specifies a reference to a resource. See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.

**@keycol (simpletable attributes)**
Specifies the column that contains the content that represents the key to the tabular structure. If @keycol is present and assigned a numerical value, the specified column is treated as a vertical header.

**@keyref**
Specifies a key name that acts as a redirectable reference based on a key definition within a map. See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for information on using this attribute.

For HDITA, the equivalent of @keyref is @data-keyref

**Comment by robander**
The definition above for @keyref should be synchronized with the definition in the linked section on keys.
Disposition: Unassigned

**@keys**
Specifies one or more names for a resource. See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for information on using this attribute.

For HDITA, the equivalent of @keys is @data-keys

**@keyscope (common map attributes)**
Specifies that the element marks the boundaries of a key scope.
See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for information on using this attribute.

**Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 28 September 2022**
Here is the content from the "DITA map attributes" topic:

**@keyscope**
Defines a new scope for key definition and resolution, and gives the scope one or more names. For more information about key scopes, see Indirect key-based addressing.

Disposition: Unassigned

**@linking (common map attributes)**
Specifies linking characteristics of a topic specific to the location of this reference in a map. If the value is not specified locally, the value might cascade from another element in the map (for cascade rules, see Cascading of metadata attributes in a DITA map).

Comment by robander on Dec 28 2021
The text below matches 1.3 spec text but I'm nervous about "cannot link" type definition. It's describing how to generate links based on the current context in the map - it's not describing what the topic itself is allowed to link to, which is how I interpret "can".

Disposition: Unassigned

The following values are valid:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>targetonly</td>
<td>A topic can only be linked to and cannot link to other topics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sourceonly</td>
<td>A topic cannot be linked to but can link to other topics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>normal</td>
<td>A topic can be linked to and can link to other topics. Use this to override the linking value of a parent topic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>none</td>
<td>A topic cannot be linked to or link to other topics.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-dita-use-conref-target

See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 28 September 2022

Here is the content from the "DITA map attributes" topic:

@linking

By default, the relationships between the topics that are referenced in a map are reciprocal:

- Child topics link to parent topics and vice versa.
- Next and previous topics in a sequence link to each other.
- Topics in a family link to their sibling topics.
- Topics referenced in the table cells of the same row in a relationship table link to each other. A topic referenced within a table cell does not (by default) link to other topics referenced in the same table cell.

This behavior can be modified by using the @linking attribute, which enables an author or information architect to specify how a topic participates in a relationship. The following values are valid:

- linking="none"
  Specifications that the topic does not exist in the map for the purposes of calculating links.
- linking="sourceonly"
  Specifications that the topic will link to its related topics but not vice versa.
- linking="targetonly"
  Specifications that the related topics will link to it but not vice versa.
- linking="normal"
  Default value. It specifies that linking will be reciprocal (the topic will link to related topics, and they will link back to it).

Authors also can create links directly in a topic by using the <xref> or <link> elements, but in most cases map-based linking is preferable, because links in topics create dependencies between topics that can hinder reuse.

Note that while the relationships between the topics that are referenced in a map are reciprocal, the relationships merely *imply* reciprocal links in generated output that includes...
The rendered navigation links are a function of the presentation style that is determined by the processor.

**@name** (data-element attributes)

Defines a unique name for the object.

Comment by robander

Do we need to specify the scope of “unique” here?

**Disposition:** Unassigned

**@otherrole**

Specifies an alternate role for a link relationship when the @role attribute is set to "other".

**@parse** (inclusion attributes)

Specifies the processing expectations for the referenced resource. Processors must support the following values:

- **text**
  
  The contents should be treated as plain text. Reserved XML characters should be displayed, and not interpreted as XML markup.

- **xml**
  
  The contents of the referenced resource should be treated as an XML document, and the referenced element should be inserted at the location of the <include> element. If a fragment identifier is included in the address of the content, processors must select the element with the specified ID. If no fragment identifier is included, the root element of the referenced XML document is selected. Any grammar processing should be performed during resolution, such that default attribute values are explicitly populated. Prolog content must be discarded.

  It is an error to use `parse="xml"` anywhere other than within `<foreign>` or a specialization thereof.

  Processors may support other values for the @parse attribute with proprietary processing semantics. Processors should issue warnings and use `<fallback>` when they encounter unsupported @parse values. Non-standard @parse instructions should be expressed as URIs.

  **Note**  Proprietary @parse values will likely limit the portability and interoperability of DITA content, so should be used with care.

**@processing-role** (common map attributes)

Specifies whether the referenced resource is processed normally or treated as a resource that is only included in order to resolve references, such as key or content references. The following values are valid:

- **normal**
  
  Indicates that the resource is a readable part of the information set. It is included in navigation and search results. This is the default value for the `<topicref>` element.

- **resource-only**
  
  Indicates that the resource should be used only for processing purposes. It is not included in navigation or search results, nor is it rendered as a topic. This is the default value for the `<keydef>` element.

**-dita-use-conref-target**

See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.
If no value is specified but the attribute is specified on a containing element within a map or within the related-links section, the value cascades from the closest containing element.

@relcolwidth (simpletable attributes)
Specifies the width of each column in relationship to the width of the other columns. The value is a space-separated list of relative column widths. Each column width is specified as a positive integer or decimal number followed by an asterisk character.

For example, the value relcolwidth="1* 2* 3*" gives a total of 6 units across three columns. The relative widths are 1/6, 2/6, and 3/6 (16.7%, 33.3%, and 50%). Similarly, the value relcolwidth="90* 150*" causes relative widths of 90/240 and 150/240 (37.5% and 62.5%).

@role
Specifies the role that a linked topic plays in relationship with the current topic.

For example, in a parent/child relationship, the role would be "parent" when the target is the parent of the current topic, and "child" when the target is the child of the current topic. This can be used to sort and classify links when rendering.

The following values are valid:

ancestor
Indicates a link to a topic above the parent topic.

child
Indicates a link to a direct child such as a directly nested or dependent topic.

cousin
Indicates a link to another topic in the same hierarchy that is not a parent, child, sibling, next, or previous.

descendant
Indicates a link to a topic below a child topic.

friend
Indicates a link to a similar topic that is not necessarily part of the same hierarchy.

next
Indicates a link to the next topic in a sequence.

other
Indicates any other kind of relationship or role. The type of role is specified as the value for the @otherrole attribute.

parent
Indicates a link to a topic that is a parent of the current topic.

previous
Indicates a link to the previous topic in a sequence.

sibling
Indicates a link between two children of the same parent topic.

-dita-use-conref-target
See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

@rowheader (complex table attributes)
Specifies whether the entries in the respective column are row headers. The following values are valid:
firstcol
  Indicates that entries in the first column of the table are row headers. This applies when the @rowheader attribute is specified on the <table> element.

headers
  Indicates that entries of the column that is described using the <colspec> element are row headers. This applies when the @rowheader attribute is specified on the <colspec> element.

norowheader
  Indicates that entries in the first column are not row headers. This applies when the @rowheader attribute is specified on the <table> element.

@dita-use-conref-target
  See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

Note
  This attribute is not part of the OASIS Exchange Table Model upon which DITA tables are based. Some processors or output formats might not support all values.

The @rowheader attribute is available on the following table elements: <table> and <colspec>.

@rowsep (complex table attributes)
  Specifies whether to render row separators between table entries. The following values are valid: "0" (no separators) and "1" (separators).

The @rowsep attribute is available on the following table elements: <colspec>, <entry>, <row>, <table>, and <tgroup>.

@scale (display attributes)
  Specifies the percentage by which fonts are resized in relation to the normal text size. The value of this attribute is a positive integer. When used on <table> or <simpletable>, the following values are valid: "50", "60", "70", "80", "90", "100", "110", "120", "140", "160", "180", "200", and -dita-use-conref-target (202).

  This attribute is primarily useful for print-oriented display. Some processors might not support all values.

  If the @scale attribute is specified on an element that contains an image, the image is not scaled. The image is scaled only if a scaling property is explicitly specified for the <image> element.

@scope (link-relationship attributes)
  Specifies the closeness of the relationship between the current document and the referenced resource. The following values are valid: "local", "peer", "external", and "-dita-use-conref-target".

  See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.

@scope
  Specifies that the current entry is a header for other table entries. The following values are valid:

  col
    Indicates that the current entry is a header for all cells in the column.

  colgroup
    Indicates that the current entry is a header for all cells in the columns that are spanned by this entry.

  row
    Indicates that the current entry is a header for all cells in the row.

  rowgroup
    Indicates that the current entry is a header for all cells in the rows that are spanned by this entry.
-dita-use-conref-target
See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

@search (common map attributes)
Specifies whether the target is available for searching. If the value is not specified locally, the value might cascade from another element in the map (for cascade rules, see Cascading of metadata attributes in a DITA map). The following values are valid: "yes", "no", and "-dita-use-conref-target".

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 28 September 2022
Here is the content from the "DITA map attributes" topic:

@search
  Specifies whether the topic is included in search indexes.
Disposition: Unassigned

@specializations (architectural attributes)
Specifies the attribute-domain specializations that are included in the document-type shell. This attribute is set as a default within the document-type shell. The value varies depending on what domains are integrated into the document-type shell. For example, a grammar file that includes the specialized attributes @audience, @deliveryTarget, and @newBaseAtt would set the value to @props/audience @props/deliveryTarget @base/newBaseAtt.

@subjectrefs (common map attributes)
Specifies one or more keys that are each defined by a subject definition in a subject scheme map. Multiple values are separated by white space.

@title-role (REQUIRED)
Specifies the role that the alternative title serves. Multiple roles are separated by white space. The following roles are defined in the specification: "linking", "navigation", "search", "subtitle", and "hint".

Processors can define custom values for the @title-role attribute.

@toc (common map attributes)
Specifies whether a topic appears in the table of contents (TOC) based on the current map context. If the value is not specified locally, the value might cascade from another element in the map (for cascade rules, see Cascading of metadata attributes in a DITA map). The following values are valid:

yes
  The topic appears in a generated TOC.

no
  The topic does not appear in a generated TOC.

-dita-use-conref-target
See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for more information.

Comment by Kristen J Eberlein on 28 September 2022
Here is the content from the "DITA map attributes" topic:

@toc
  Specifies whether topics are excluded from navigation output, such as a Web site map or an online table of contents. By default, <topicref> hierarchies are included in navigation output; relationship tables are excluded.
Disposition: Unassigned
@type (link-relationship attributes)
Describes the target of a reference. See C.4 STUB CONTENT (202) for detailed information on supported values and processing implications.

@value (data-element attributes)
Specifies a value associated with the current property or element.

@valign (complex table attributes)
Specifies the vertical alignment of text in table entries. The following values are valid:

  bottom
  Indicates that text is aligned with the bottom of the table entry.

  middle
  Indicates that text is aligned with the middle of the table entry.

  top
  Indicates that text is aligned with the top of the table entry.

-dita-use-conref-target
See Using the -dita-use-conref-target value for more information.

The @valign attribute is available on the following table elements: <entry>, <tbody>, <thead>, and <row>.

@xml:space
Specifies how to handle white space in the current element. This attribute is provided on <pre>, <lines>, and on elements specialized from those. It ensures that parsers respect white space that is part of the data in those elements, including line-end characters. When defined, it has a fixed value of "preserve", making it a default property of the element that cannot be changed or deleted by authors.

@xmlns:ditaarch (architectural attributes)
Declares the default DITA namespace. This namespace is declared as such in the RNG modules for <topic> and <map>, but it is specified as an attribute in the equivalent DTD-based modules. The value is fixed to "http://dita.oasis-open.org/architecture/2005/".

C.4 STUB CONTENT

STUB CONTENT
STUB CONTENT

STUB CONTENT
STUB CONTENT

STUB CONTENT
STUB CONTENT

STUB CONTENT
STUB CONTENT

STUB CONTENT
STUB CONTENT

STUB CONTENT
STUB CONTENT

STUB CONTENT
STUB CONTENT

STUB CONTENT
STUB CONTENT

STUB CONTENT
STUB CONTENT
D Element-by-element recommendations for translators

This topic contains a list of all OASIS DITA elements that are available in the edition. It includes recommendations on whether the element contents are likely to be suitable for translation and whether the element has attributes whose values are likely to be suitable for translation. Examples of content that is not suitable for translation include code fragments and mailing addresses.

Notes on the tables below

- Note that an element might be a block element in one context and an inline element in another. In addition, specialized element types might be rendered in a way that varies from their specialization base. Accordingly, the distinctions presented in the tables are provided only as a guide to known behavior with the base DITA. For element specializations that are not distributed by OASIS, the suggested default is to fall back to the closest ancestor element that is part of the OASIS distribution.
- For all elements, the @translate attribute overrides the suggested defaults specified in the tables below.
- Certain block-level elements might appear in the middle of a translation segment. They are considered subflow elements in regard to translation. When located in the middle of a translation segment, these element should not be translated as part of that segment. Whenever possible, such elements should be placed only at sentence boundaries in order to aid translation. The subflow elements in base DITA are <draft-comment>, <fn>, <idex-see>, <index-see-also>, <indexterm>, and <required-cleanup>
- The <keyword> element (as well as specializations of <keyword>) is an inline, phrase-like element when it appears in the body of a document. It can also appear in the <keywords> element in <topicmeta> (for maps) or in the <prolog> (for topic). When it appears in the <keywords> element, each <keyword> represents an individual segment. In that location, <keyword> is considered a subflow element.

Explanation of column headers

The following list explains the headers for the columns:

- **Element name**
  The name of the element.

- **Specialization base**
  The element from which the current element is specialized. This column only appears in tables for the domain elements.

- **Same behavior as specialization base?**
  Indicates whether the element has the same behaviors in regard to translation as its specialization base. The behaviors are whether the element is formatted as a single block or as an inline element, whether the element represents a complete translatable segment, and whether the element contains translatable content. This column only appears in tables for the domain elements.

- **Block:inline translation**
  Indicates whether the element represents a complete translatable segment.

- **Translatable content?**
  Whether the element contains one or both of the following:
- Text content that can be translated
- Child elements that contain content that can be translated

**Notes**
This column contains any additional information, including the following items. This column only appears in tables when it is needed.
- Whether the element has any attributes with values that might need translation
- If specializations of the element might need translation,
- If the element is a "subflow" element for the purposes of translation

**Bookmap elements**
The following table contains information about the bookmap specialization. There are no translatable attributes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;abbrevlist&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;amendments&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;appendix&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;approved&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;backmatter&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;bibliolist&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;bookabstract&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;bookchangehistory&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;bookevent&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;bookeventtype&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;bookid&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;booklibrary&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;booklist&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;booklists&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;bookmap&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;map&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;bookmeta&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicmeta&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;booknumber&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;bookowner&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;bookpartno&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;bookrestriction&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;bookrights&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;booktitle&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;title&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;booktitlealt&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element name</td>
<td>Specialization base</td>
<td>Same behavior as specialization base?</td>
<td>Block/inline (translation)</td>
<td>Translatable content?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;chapter&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;colophon&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;completed&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;copyrfirst&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;copyrlast&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;day&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;dedication&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;draftintro&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;edited&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;edition&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;figurelist&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;frontmatter&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;glossarylist&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;indexlist&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;isbn&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;mainbooktitle&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;maintainer&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;month&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;notices&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;organization&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;part&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;person&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;preface&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;printlocation&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;published&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;publisherinformation&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;publisher&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;publishtype&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;reviewed&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;revisionid&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;started&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;summary&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;tablelist&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;tested&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Concept elements
The following table contains information about the concept specialization. There are no translatable attributes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;toc&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;trademarklist&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topicref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;volume&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;year&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Glossary entry elements
The following table contains information about the glossary entry specialization.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;glossAbbreviation&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;title&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;glossAcronym&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;title&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;glossAlt&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;section&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;glossAlternateFor&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;xref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>n/a (empty element)</td>
<td>n/a (empty element)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;glossbody&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;body&gt;, &lt;conbody&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;glossdef&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;abstract&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;glossentry&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topic&gt;, &lt;concept&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;glossPartOfSpeech&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;, &lt;concept&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;glossProperty&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;glossScopeNote&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;note&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>@othertype</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;glossShortForm&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;title&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;glossStatus&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;glossSurfaceForm&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;p&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The following table contains information about the glossary group specialization. There are no translatable attributes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;glossgroup&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topic&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table contains information about the reference specialization. There are no translatable attributes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;propdesc&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;stentry&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;propdeschd&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;stentry&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;properties&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;simpletable&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;property&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;strow&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;prophhead&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;sthead&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;proptype&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;stentry&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;proptypehd&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;stentry&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;propvalue&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;stentry&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;propvaluehd&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;stentry&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;refbody&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;body&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;refbodydiv&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;bodydiv&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;reference&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;topic&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;refsyn&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;section&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Task elements

The following table contains information about the task specialization. There are no translatable attributes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;chdesc&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;stentry&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;chdescd&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;stentry&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;chhead&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;sthead&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;choice&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;li&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;choices&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;ul&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;chicetable&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;simpletable&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;chooption&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;stentry&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;choptionhd&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;stentry&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;chrow&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;strow&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;cmd&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;ph&gt;</code></td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;context&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;section&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;info&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;div&gt;</code></td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;postreq&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;section&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;prereq&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;section&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;result&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;section&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;step&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;li&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;stepresult&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;div&gt;</code></td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;steps&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;ol&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;steps-informal&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;section&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;steps-unordered&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;ul&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;stepsection&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;li&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;steptroubleshooting&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;div&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;stepxmp&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;div&gt;</code></td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;task&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;topic&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;taskbody&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;body&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;tasktroubleshooting&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;section&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;tutorialinfo&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;div&gt;</code></td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Troubleshooting elements

The following table contains information about the troubleshooting specialization. There are no translatable attributes.
### Abbreviated form domain (abbrev-d)

The following table contains information about the abbreviated form domain. There are no translatable attributes in this domain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;abbreviated-form&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;term&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>n/a (empty element)</td>
<td>n/a (empty element)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Equation domain (equation-d)

The following table contains information about the equation domain. There are no translatable attributes in this domain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;equation-inline&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;ph&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;equation-block&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;div&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;equation-number&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;ph&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;equation-figure&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;fig&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Glossary reference domain (glossref-d)

The following table contains information about the glossary reference domain. There are no translatable attributes in this domain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;glossref&gt;</code></td>
<td><code>&lt;topicref&gt;</code></td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Hardware domain (hw-d)

The following table contains information about the hardware domain. There are no translatable attributes in this domain.
### Markup domain (markup-d)

The following table contains information about the markup domain. There are no translatable attributes in this domain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;markupname&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;keyword&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### MathML domain (mathml-d)

The following table contains information about the MathML domain. There are no translatable attributes in this domain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;mathml&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;foreign&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>Depends on math content</td>
<td>Follow rules established for MathML standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;mathmlref&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;include&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>n/a (empty element)</td>
<td>n/a (empty element)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Programming domain (pr-d)

The following table contains information about the programming domain. There are no translatable attributes in this domain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;apiname&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;keyword&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;codeblock&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;pre&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;codeph&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;coderef&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;include&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>n/a (empty element)</td>
<td>n/a (empty element)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;option&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;keyword&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;parml&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;dl&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;paramname&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;keyword&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;pd&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;dd&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;plentry&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;dlentry&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;pt&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;dt&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Release management domain (relmgmt-d)

The following table contains information about the release management domain. There are no translatable attributes in this domain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;change-historylist&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;metadata&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;change-completed&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;change-item&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;change-person&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;change-organization&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;change-revisionid&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;change-request-reference&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;change-request-system&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;change-request-id&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;change-started&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;change-summary&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Software domain (sw-d)

The following table contains information about the software domain. There are no translatable attributes in this domain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;cmdname&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;keyword&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;filepath&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;msgblock&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;pre&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;msgnum&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;keyword&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;msgph&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;systemoutput&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;userinput&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;varname&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;keyword&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SVG domain (svg-d)

The following table contains information about the SVG domain. There are no translatable attributes in this domain.
### Syntax diagram domain (syntaxdiagram-d)

The following table contains information about the syntax diagram domain. There are no translatable attributes in this domain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;delim&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;fragment&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;figgroup&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;fragref&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;xref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;groupchoice&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;figgroup&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;groupcomp&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;figgroup&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;groupseq&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;figgroup&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;kw&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;keyword&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;oper&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;repsep&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;sep&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;synblk&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;figgroup&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;synnote&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;fn&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;synnoteref&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;xref&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;synph&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;syntaxdiagram&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;fig&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;var&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### User interface domain (ui-d)

The following table contains information about the user interface domain. There are no translatable attributes in this domain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;menucascade&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;screen&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;pre&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;shortcut&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;keyword&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;uicontrol&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### XML mention domain (xml-d)

The following table contains information about the XML mention domain. There are no translatable attributes in this domain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;wintitle&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;keyword&gt;</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>inline</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### XNAL domain (xnal-d)

The XNAL information is all metadata, so it generally does not need to be translated. Exceptions might be needed when selections from this metadata are used for display purposes. The standard behavior might need to change based on local business rules. For example, in some cases it might be appropriate to translate the honorific, country, or organizationname elements. There are no translatable attributes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element name</th>
<th>Specialization base</th>
<th>Same behavior as specialization base?</th>
<th>Block/inline (translation)</th>
<th>Translatable content?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;addressdetails&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;administrativearea&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;authorinformation&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;author&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;contactnumber&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;contactnumbers&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;country&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;emailaddress&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;emailaddresses&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element name</td>
<td>Specialization base</td>
<td>Same behavior as specialization base?</td>
<td>Block/inline (translation)</td>
<td>Translatable content?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;firstname&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;generationidentifier&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;honorific&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;lastname&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;locality&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;localityname&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;middlename&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;namedetails&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;organizationinfo&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;organizationname&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;organizationnamedetails&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;otherinfo&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;personinfo&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;personname&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;postalcode&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;thoroughfare&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;ph&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;url&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;urls&gt;</td>
<td>&lt;data&gt;</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>block</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
E Formatting expectations

DITA is a standard that supports the creation of human-readable content. Accordingly, DITA defines fundamental document components. Since there is a reasonable expectation that such document components be formatted consistently, we suggest the following conventions.

---

**Comment by robander on 25 May 2021**

I can't remember ... is this expected to include the content of every "Rendering expectations" section in this spec, or did we have a distinction between rendering and formatting? Right now it seems pretty inconsistent, for example we say chdeschd is bold here but that topic doesn't have a "rendering" section, while codeblock here says to use monospace but doesn't say anything about the required white-space and newlines.

If there is a distinction, I've already forgotten it, so we should probably explain here what the difference is.

---

Kris Eberlein, 06 October 2022

Yes, we make a clear distinction between "rendering" and "formatting". Formatting is NEVER normative. It's always implementation specific. Your implementation might decide to format bold elements using purple text.

"Rendering" is normative. For example, we state that `<stepsection>` elements (if rendered), must not be numbered.

**Disposition: Unassigned**

---

### Table 2: Formatting expectations for DITA elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Suggested formatting</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;chdeschd&gt;</code></td>
<td>Apply bold highlighting to the contents of the <code>&lt;chdeschd&gt;</code> element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;choicetable&gt;</code></td>
<td>Unless the <code>@keycol</code> attribute is set to &quot;0&quot;, processors typically apply bold highlighting to the contents of the &quot;Option&quot; column.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;choptionhd&gt;</code></td>
<td>Apply bold highlighting to the contents of the <code>&lt;choptionhd&gt;</code> element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;codeblock&gt;</code></td>
<td>Use a monospaced font for the contents of the <code>&lt;codeblock&gt;</code> element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;cdeeph&gt;</code></td>
<td>Use a monospaced font for the contents of the <code>&lt;cdeeph&gt;</code> element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;menucascade&gt;</code></td>
<td>Separate <code>&lt;uicontrol&gt;</code> elements with a character to represent the menu cascade.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;numcharref&gt;</code></td>
<td>Surround the contents of the <code>&lt;numcharref&gt;</code> element with a leading ampersand (&amp;) and a trailing semi-colon (;).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;parameterentity&gt;</code></td>
<td>Surround the contents of the <code>&lt;numcharref&gt;</code> element with a leading percentage sign (%) and a trailing semi-colon (;).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;screen&gt;</code></td>
<td>Enclose the contents of the <code>&lt;screen&gt;</code> element with a box to suggest a computer display screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;shortcut&gt;</code></td>
<td>Highlight the keyboard shortcut with underlining.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element</td>
<td>Suggested formatting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;syntaxdiagram&gt;</code></td>
<td>Traditionally, the syntax diagram is formatted with &quot;railroad tracks&quot; that connect the units of the syntax together, but the presentation might differ depending on the output media.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;textentity&gt;</code></td>
<td>Surround the contents of the <code>&lt;textentity&gt;</code> element with a leading ampersand (&amp;) and a trailing semi-colon (;).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;var&gt;</code></td>
<td>Apply italic highlighting to the contents of the <code>&lt;var&gt;</code> element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;xmlatt&gt;</code></td>
<td>Precede the contents of the <code>&lt;xmlatt&gt;</code> element with a commercial at symbol (@) or equals character (=).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;xmlelement&gt;</code></td>
<td>Surround the contents of the <code>&lt;xmlelement&gt;</code> element with leading (&lt;) and trailing (&gt;) angle brackets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# F Revision history

The following table contains information about revisions to this document.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Revision</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Editor</th>
<th>Description of changes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>01</td>
<td>19 May 2019</td>
<td>Kristen James Eberlein</td>
<td>Generated working draft #01. Contains initial TOC for consideration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>02</td>
<td>24 May 2019</td>
<td>Kristen James Eberlein</td>
<td>Generated working draft #02. Contains reworked task element topics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>03</td>
<td>27 August 2017</td>
<td>Kristen James Eberlein</td>
<td>Generated working draft #03. Contains updated DITA source for the following proposals:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• #85: Several glossentry elements should allow <code>&lt;sub&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;sup&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• #106 Allow steps to nest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Contains edited element-reference topics for the following domains:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Markup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Programming (partial)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Software</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• User interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• XML mention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>06</td>
<td>17 October 2022</td>
<td>Kristen James Eberlein</td>
<td>Contains content for review A: Task elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>07</td>
<td>08 November 2022</td>
<td>Kristen James Eberlein</td>
<td>Contains content revised as a result of review A comments, plus content prepped for review B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>